



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2022 with funding from
University of Toronto

CA1

Z 1

-74M21

Unpublished
Publications

MACKENZIE VALLEY PIPELINE INQUIRY

IN THE MATTER OF APPLICATIONS BY EACH OF
(a) CANADIAN ARCTIC GAS PIPELINE LIMITED FOR A
RIGHT-OF-WAY THAT MIGHT BE GRANTED ACROSS
CROWN LANDS WITHIN THE YUKON TERRITORY AND
THE NORTHWEST TERRITORIES, and
(b) FOOTHILLS PIPE LINES LTD. FOR A RIGHT-OF-WAY
THAT MIGHT BE GRANTED ACROSS CROWN LANDS
WITHIN THE NORTHWEST TERRITORIES
FOR THE PURPOSE OF A PROPOSED MACKENZIE VALLEY PIPELINE

and

IN THE MATTER OF THE SOCIAL, ENVIRONMENTAL AND
ECONOMIC IMPACT REGIONALLY OF THE CONSTRUCTION,
OPERATION AND SUBSEQUENT ABANDONMENT OF THE ABOVE
PROPOSED PIPELINE.

(Before the Honourable Mr. Justice Berger, Commissioner)

Yellowknife, N.W.T.,

October 23, 1975.

PROCEEDINGS AT INQUIRY

Volume 78

CANADIAN ARCTIC
GAS STUDY LTD.

NOV 24 1975

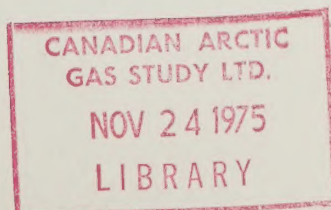
LIBRARY

VOLUME 76, Page 11224 line 19 and 20

should read;

MR. BAYLY: This isn't a signal that I
will be a long time, it's for convenience.

347
M835
Vol. 78



APPEARANCES:

Mr. Ian G. Scott, Q.C.
Mr. Stephen T. Goudge,
Mr. Alick Ryder and
Mr. Ian Roland for Mackenzie Valley
Pipeline Inquiry;
Mr. Pierre Genest, Q.C.
Mr. Jack Marshall,
Mr. Darryl Carter, and
for Canadian Arctic Gas
Pipeline Limited;
Mr. Reginald Gibbs, Q.C.
Mr. Alan Hollingworth for Foothills Pipelines
Ltd.;
Mr. Russell Anthony,
Prof, Alastair Lucas for Canadian Arctic
Resources Committee;
Mr. Glen W. Bell and
Mr. Gerry Sutton for Northwest Territories
Indian Brotherhood and
Metis Association of the
Northwest Territories;
Mr. John Bayly for Inuit Tapirisat of
Canada and the
committee for Original
Peoples Entitlement;
Mr. Ron Veale and
Mr. Allen Lueck for the council for the
Yukon Indians
Mr. Carson H. Templeton for Environment Protect-
ion Board;
Mr. David Reesor for Northwest Territories
Association of Muni-
cipalities
Mr. Murray Sigler for Northwest Territories
Chamber of Commerce

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

ALL WEST REPORTING LTD.

WITNESSES FOR CANADIAN ARCTIC RESOURCES COMMITTEE:

Murray A. ROED

- Cross-Examination by Mr. Bayly 114
- Cross-Examination by Mr. Hollingworth 115
- Cross-Examination by Mr. Carter 1153
- Cross-Examination by Mr. Goudge 11567

EXHIBITS:

- 299 Article from "Northern Miner" re Polar Gas project, October 16, 1975 1150
- 300 Report of Dr. Rampton, "Terrain Evaliation Mackenzie Transportation Corridor" 11580

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Bayly

Yellowknife, N.W.T.

October 23, 1975.

(PROCEEDINGS RESUMED PURSUANT TO ADJOURNMENT)

MURRAY A. ROED, resumed:

CROSS-EXAMINATION BY MR. BAYLY:

Q Dr. Roed, with regard to the analysis that you have conducted into possible alternatives to the Mackenzie Valley route, I take it that the only basis on which you have studied these is on a terrain analysis basis. Is that correct?

A That's correct.

Q And the questions that were asked of Dr. Rutter today -- sorry, yesterday -- were, in his estimation his study, was one that recommended that an office study at least be done at this stage. Would you say the same about the routes that you studied, that a company who was interested in those routes, or a government, would be in a position to do an office study on them?

A That's correct.

Q But you haven't studied these routes with regard to environmental impact that they would have, or say social impacts at the northern end?

A No, we haven't.

Q Right. Your main thesis being, though, that those areas should be opened up at some point, in any event, because of the very good mineralization in those areas.

Cross-Exam by Bayly

1 A There is that possibility,
2 yes.

3 Q I take it that you
4 haven't studied the methods that would be used in
5 crossing the large lakes, Great Bear and Great Slave,
6 but that you're relying on the fact that this is being
7 studied in other parts of the world in the oil and
8 gas industry, is that correct?

9 A Generally that's correct.
10 The crossings that we have envisaged are engineeringly
11 feasible at this time.

12 THE COMMISSIONER: The cross-
13 ings that you envisage under Great Bear and Great
14 Slave are, in your view, feasible from an engineering
15 point of view?

16 A From the data that I have
17 at hand, yes, it is.

18 Q Are there any pipeline
19 crossings that exist in the world today that are
20 comparable to the ones you propose?

21 A Yes, there are.

22 Q Where are they?

23 A I have several papers
24 that document, pretty well, the latest phases of laying
25 pipe in submarine conditions, whether it's in
26 fresh water or marine water. I'd be more than happy
27 to make these available to you, at your convenience.

28 Q Yes, well maybe you
29 would, maybe we should have those.

30 MR. GOUDGE: Perhaps we should

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Bayly

1 A There is that possibility,
2 yes.

3 Q I take it that you
4 haven't studied the methods that would be used in
5 crossing the large lakes, Great Bear and Great Slave,
6 but that you're relying on the fact that this is being
7 studied in other parts of the world in the oil and
8 gas industry, is that correct?

9 A Generally that's correct.
10 The crossings that we have envisaged are engineeringly
11 feasible at this time.

12 THE COMMISSIONER: The cross-
13 ings that you envisage under Great Bear and Great
14 Slave are, in your view, feasible from an engineering
15 point of view?

16 A From the data that I have
17 at hand, yes, it is.

18 Q Are there any pipeline
19 crossings that exist in the world today that are
20 comparable to the ones you propose?

21 A Yes, there are.

22 Q Where are they?

23 A I have several papers
24 that document, pretty well, the latest phases of laying
25 pipe in submarine conditions, whether it's in
26 fresh water or marine water. I'd be more than happy
27 to make these available to you, at your convenience.

28 Q Yes, well maybe you
29 would, maybe we should have those.

30 MR. GOUDGE: Perhaps we should

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Bayly

1 get copies of them, sir, and have them filed. They
2 may be of assistance to us.

3 THE COMMISSIONER: Yes sir.

4 MR. GOUDGE: Perhaps Mr.

5 Anthony would undertake to do that, since --

6 MR. ANTHONY: Perhaps the
7 witness could just identify the areas to assist us initially
8 / and I under-
9 / take to make photo-copies of the articles, they are bas-
ally articles in trade
/ and professional journals, and we'll make those
10 available to the Inquiry as an exhibit and to any
11 participants who wish to look at them.

12 A There are numerous tech-
13 niques, and different companies that are doing this
14 sort of thing, and it's quite involved actually.

15 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, I'm
16 sure it's quite involved, and we would like you to
17 give those to Mr. Anthony so he can file them with the
18 Inquiry, but can you tell me of a gas pipeline that
19 extends under water or under the bed or a sea or a
20 lake for 50 miles or more, where has it been done?

21 A I'll just quickly go
22 through these articles.

23 Q Sure.

24 A I won't read them.
25 . First of all there's the North Sea operation, they have
26 what they call a reel ship, "Santa Fe", which expects
27 to -- this is expected to be launched in 1977, it is
28 designed to lay pipe up to 24 inches in diameter in
29 deep portions of the North Sea, which could be used
30 in water depths of 1,000 feet or more. That's the

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Bayly

1 first one, and there are several similar type designs
2 in this paper.

3 Again in the North Sea, B.P.,
4 British Petroleum 32-inch underwater pipeline from Ford-
5 ies Field now completed required the final connection
6 of two sections which had previously been laid simul-
7 taneously by two contractors. Unprecedented in
8 water depths that great, the above water tie-in was
9 successfully completed October 14, 1974, in 322 feet
10 of water.
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

1 Then it goes on to detail that
2 and it says that the pipe was 32" in diameter, .75 WT,
3 gives the grade of steel. It was corrosion wrapped
4 and concrete coated for a total OD of 37" and negative
5 bouyancy. There is another case. This is a summary
6 of the Polar Gas exploration in this subject. They
7 are looking at laying from barges to a maximum of
8 32" pipe in water depths of 400 feet at a rate up to
9 one mile per day in optimum weather conditions. The
10 I think
11 actual technique, however,/that they are really looking
12 at now, I will just read this paragraph:

12 "Polar Gas has developed a system to lay the
13 line from the ice during a four month winter
14 season. Studies last year proved six-foot
15 thick ice would support heavy construction
16 equipment including a ditcher able to cut
17 through fifteen feet of ice and the trench
18 would remain open long enough to allow the
19 pipe to be laid through it."

20 I have some further notes here. For instance, if you
21 are crossing a large lake, you might use two 36"
22 pipes instead of one 48" pipe, and this would be
23 relatively easy to manouver. I understand CAGSL is
24 using two 36" pipes in their proposed Shallow Bay
25 crossing, very similar conditions.

26 The other alternative to these,
27 done by our research staff, you could float the pipe
28 across lakes even to the diameter of 48". YOu would
29 have to know the bottom configuration in detail to
30 obtain areas where the radius of curvature was greater

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Bayly

1 than that of the pipe and the detail of bottom morpho-
2 logy with respect to pipe strength.

3 Skipping over to the Messina
4 Strait, in the Tyrrhenian Sea near --

5 THE COMMISSIONER: The Tyrrhenian
6 Sea, that is in the Mediterranean?

7 A That is right.

8 THE COMMISSIONER: I am sorry,
9 where is that, forgive me.

10 A It connects the mainland
11 of Italy with the island of Sicily. There is a
12 10" pipeline, 9.3 miles long which is now connected,
13 which connects the coast of Calabria on the Italian
14 mainland and Sicily. Completion of this line marks
15 the first time a sea line has been laid at a depth
16 greater than 1,000 feet.

17 Those are a very brief summary
18 of the ones that I have noted in these papers. There
19 are additional details and additional localities that
20 you will find in this information, but it clearly
21 indicates to me that this is an engineering feasibility
22 at this stage.

23 THE COMMISSIONER: Thank you.

24 MR. BAYLY: O Dr. Roed, I
25 take it though, that you say, haven't studied either
26 of these large lakes to see which method would be
27 suitable either laying through ice or laying from
28 barges.

29 A That is correct.

30 Q And you are extrapolating

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Bayly

1 from these articles that the technology exists to do
2 it in one of those methods or a combination of them.

3 A That is correct from
4 the standpoint of the level of information that I have
5 presented this evidence.

6 Q Yes. Now, you are
7 aware, I gather too, because your route map, this
8 gray one that you presented us with marks the Anderson
9 River Bird Sanctuary, that one of the possible
10 alternatives would go directly through that sanctuary.

11 A Yes.

12 Q But I notice that you
13 have also marked that this red circle, called the
14 area of highest probability of new gas discoveries and
15 seems to include part of that river delta as well.

16 A Yes.

17 Q Where did you get your
18 information about this being the area of highest
19 probability of new gas discoveries?

20 A This information is
21 obtained from a Northern Assessment Group report by
22 Mr. Jim Shear who studied the oil and gas bearing
23 rocks of the Mackenzie Delta and outlined his in-
24 terpretation of the principal, most likely extent of
25 the principal sedimentary basin.

26 Q And I notice that takes
27 in a portion of Banks Island as part of the high
28 probability area, is that correct?

29 A That is correct. This is
30 an approximate line only--

H. A. Reed
Cross-Exam by Bayly

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

Q Yes.

A -- I might add.

Q Now, we have heard

recently or read recently in the newspapers discussion
of what has been popularly called a "Y" pipeline
route.

A Yes.

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Bayly

1 Q Could you tell us from
2 the information you have where that route would be?
3 Could it be traced on one of the maps before us?

4 A I have before me a map
5 taken from "The Northern Miner" of October 16, 1975
6 issue, page 8, which details, in a very general way, the
7 Y-route which I think you are referring to. I'll
8 be happy to submit this as evidence, and shall I just --

9 Q Could you just trace
10 that route so that it will be on the record as well?
11 Then when you're tracing it on the map, you can describe
12 for the record in words where the line is going.

13 A I'll just briefly explain
14 it. Starting in the north, roughly in the area of
15 Cameron Island, and I'm using this map as a guide,
16 Cameron Island is just to the north-west of Bathurst
17 Island. The line extends south-west across Melville
18 Island and the M'Clure Strait, cuts through the centre
19 of Banks Island, joins I think it's the Perry Peninsula
20 north-west of Paulatuk, and then in a south-west
21 direction directly to apparently tie in with the
22 Mackenzie Valley roughly in the area of Travaillant
23 Lake.

24 The other Y of the line extends
25 in an ~~esterly~~ easterly direction almost straight east from
26 Travaillant Lake tie-in, passes to the north of Great
27 Bear Lake, in between the Thelon Game Sanctuary and
28 the Queen Mine Gulf Bird Sanctuary, and ties in with
29 the projected Polar Gas line that runs down from the
30 Arctic Islands on the west side of Hudson's Bay.

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Bayly

1 It ties in here along the west side, right about here.
2 That is between Chesterfield Inlet and Wager Bay, some
3 general area in that region.

4 Q And from there it proceeds
5 south past the communities of Rankin Inlet, Whale
6 Cove, and Eskimo Point, would that be correct, before
7 it hits the provinces? The Polar Gas route.

8 A Yes.

9 Q Now, would you care to
10 comment, Dr. Roed, on this proposed Y-route from a
11 terrain standpoint, if you have information that you
12 can give us on that?

13 A Well, first of all I
14 understand, from the news media, that this proposition
15 is presently under study by some division of government,
16 and I have spent really no time in considering this
17 route, these two routes. It's been a very recent
18 suggestion. I must say that to begin with, this
19 is the kind of general route selection which our
20 entire evidence is trying to avoid.

21 We feel that we should take a
22 look at the total spectrum of physical, environmental,
23 and socio-economic aspects of potential land use in
24 the Arctic before such routes are shown on a map
25 like this. So you know, that is my personal comment
26 from the standpoint of philosophy of route corridor
27 selection, or transportation reasonableness.

28 The other one is, very basically
29 you can take a look at the Glacial Map of Canada, and
30 from the standpoint of considering the southern route,

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Bayly

1 this east-west --

2 THE COMMISSIONER: Excuse me
3 a second, Dr. Roed. The Y is a line that would
4 bring the gas from the High Arctic to the south along
5 the west side of Hudson's Bay. Are you discussing
6 that line, or are you discussing a line that -- these
7 dotted lines, the one seems to be a line that would
8 take the high Arctic gas to the delta and south
9 through the Mackenzie Valley line; the other one
10 appears to be one that would take the Prudhoe Bay and
11 delta gas across the barrens to a point near Chester-
12 field Inlet, which you've already described, where it
13 would join the high Arctic line. Is that what those
14 dotted lines are supposed to represent?

15 A I think so.

16 Q Oh.

17 A I think so, I think that
18 is the idea.

19 Q And your comments are
20 -- relate not just to the Y in a solid line, but to
21 the whole procedure, is that it?

22 A Well, certainly my
23 comments relate to the Mackenzie Valley Pipeline, as
24 we have been dealing with.

25 Q Yes.

26 A I really haven't -- I'm
27 not relating to the Polar Gas route, you know, the
28 principal Polar Gas route coming down to the west side
29 of the Hudson's Bay at this stage; but you asked about
30 the inter-connection of these two lines and you know,

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Bayly

1 that's what I was trying to answer. So that -- and I
2 would like to restrict my answer to an example, picking
3 the east-west connection between the Mackenzie Valley
4 area and the east side of the Hudson's Bay as a --

5 MR. BAYLY:
Q That's the west side,

6 I believe.

7 A Yes, the west side of
8 Hudson's Bay, to illustrate some fundamentals of
9 terrain planning and pipeline routing.

10 MR. BAYLY: I believe you're
11 about to refer to the satellite photograph.

12 A Yes. Well, first of
13 all we can take a look at the glacial map of Canada and
14 although you people can't see it from the back of the
15 room, most of the glacial features -- that is the
16 terrain features, the topographic features -- are
17 orientated in a north-south direction, perpendicular
18 to the centre line of this suggested route. Well,
19 this at first glance, and not considering bedrock
20 features or major depressions in the bedrock that
21 would have to be crossed.

22

23

24

25

26

27

28

29

30

1 This indicates that this
2 line is transecting it in the worst possible manner,
3 terrain. That is, from the standpoint of terrain
4 planning, what we would like to see is the transportation,
5 any transportation route being aligned in conformity
6 with terrain features rather than directly across
7 them. That is the example that I would like to
8 report.

9 THE COMMISSIONER: Yes, but
10 the "Y" thing standing alone bears some correspondence
11 to the general north-south direction of the glacial
12 features on the map, is that true?

13 A That is correct and I
14 might also add just as a first level look
15 at the northwestern portion of that "y" coming
16 from here, it appears to be quite well situated from
17 the standpoint of geography and no one potential in
18 this area, that is, it is felt that Banks Island would
19 probably be the next area of major discoveries in the
20 area, it is a line, more or less in direct line with
21 Cameron Bay where the recent oil discoveries have
22 been.

23 THE COMMISSIONER: That is,
24 the first dotted lines would bring high Arctic gas
25 to the Mackenzie Delta for transmission to the south.

26 A That is right.

27 THE COMMISSIONER: This appears
28 to proceed on the assumption that if you didn't build
29 this "Y" line in the high Arctic south along the west
30 side of Hudson Bay, you'd bring the high Arctic gas out

1 via the Mackenzie Valley.

2 A That is correct.

3 THE COMMISSIONER: And you
4 would pick up the Banks Island -Victoria Island gas
5 assuming anybody finds some there, on your way out.

6 A That would be the logical
7 thing, yes.

8 MR. BAYLY: And you aren't
9 able to say, Dr. Roed, anything about that crossing
10 from Banks Island to the mainland, I assume, without
11 having done some preliminary --

12 A No, I am not.

13 THE COMMISSIONER: Mr. Blair
14 of Foothills gave evidence and he seemed in a certain
15 measure to agree with you about building a line
16 that tapped the gas at Banks Island and Victoria
17 Island along that route. Maybe that is where this
18 paper got the idea.

19 Well, this is an exhibit.

20 (ARTICLE FROM NORTHERN MINER, OCTOBER 16, 1975, RE
21 POLAR GAS PROJECT MARKED EXHIBIT 299)

22 MR. BAYLY: Now, if I understand
23 your answer of about three answers ago, what you are
24 saying with regard to routes like this, your general
25 comment was that ^{that} you felt/a number of routes, all
26 the possible routes from the possible gas sources should
27 be studied from all the points of view, not just
28 terrain analysis before an ultimate decision was made
29 of which one was the most suitable to get the most
30 resources out?

M.A. Roed

Cross-Exam by Bayly

1 A Well, that is correct,
2 and this more or less underlines the last paragraph
3 in my testimony with regard to, in my opinion, a very
4 urgent need to undertake a very comprehensive study
5 of northern Canada resources, in physical resources and
6 human resources and capabilities of the land. I
7 don't know how I can be more stronger in urging that
8 this be done immediately.

9 Q AND I take it that the
10 alternate to that is to end up perhaps with two
11 or more expensive facilities where one might have
12 done to get out the combination of resources that
13 is sought, not to mention the possible terrain and
14 social and environmental problems that might be
15 caused by having two rather than one.

16 A I am not sure that I
17 understand your question.

18 Q Well, you have given us
19 an answer that suggests that an inventory should be
20 taken of all the resources including all the mineral
21 and gas resources, the human resources, the environmental
22 resources, as they be plant and animal, before deciding
23 which is the best way to take out the largest amount
24 of resource with the least amount of impact.

25 A That is correct and as
26 long as you include all of the resources, that is
27 exactly it.

28 Q And the alternate to that
29 is to end up doing with more than one facility what
30 you might have been able to do with one.

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Bayly
Cross-Exam by Hollingworth

1 A That is the possibility,
2 I suppose.

3 MR. BAYLY: Yes. Those are
4 all the questions I have, thank you.

5 MR. BELL: I have no questions,
6 sir.

7 MR. HOLLINGWORTH: I have a
8 few.

9 CROSS-EXAMINATION BY MR. HOLLINGWORTH:

10 Q Dr. Roed, in answer to
11 Mr. Bayly, you said that your views are restricted
12 to terrain features, I believe, and I just wanted
13 to clarify that because on page one of your prepared
14 evidence in the second paragraph, you state that
15 your views are prepared from the viewpoint of the
16 physical environment and then on page 12 in the last
17 paragraph you state that it is from purely a terrain
18 point of view. Are you equating a terrain point of
19 view with the physical environment, in other words,
20 restricting your view of the physical environment to
21 the terrain?

22 A Well, the terrain aspect
23 of the physical environment is a major part of it.
24 Now, the reason I use the physical environment in
25 certain places is, that I would like to include in the
26 the resources of the physical environment, the non-
27 biologic resources --

28 Q Well, did you in fact
29 include those?

30 A On the general level

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Hollingworth

1 consideration, yes I certainly did. For example,
2 the minerals along the edge of the shield or in-
3 shield terrain, potential coal resources, this
4 kind of thing.

5 Q So that your view is
6 from the standpoint of both the terrain point of
7 view and from the potential resources of the area?

8 A In total, yes, we are
9 emphasizing the terrain sensitivity in this presentation
10 but it does include other aspects.

11 Q But you are including nothing
12 more than the terrain and the resources available
13 in the Territory, in your view?

14 A That is right.

15 Q Now, also on page one
16 of your evidence you say that a model route should
17 have -- sorry, should be close to the most abundant
18 resources. Are you speaking there of the resources
19 that we have just discussed, or are you speaking
20 of resources for the construction of the pipeline?

21 A I am speaking of both.
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Hollingworth

1 Q And also on page 1, I
2 understand you to say that generally rivers and valleys
3 are unfavorable terrain for pipelines; is that correct?

4 A Yes, correct.

5 Q Still on page 1 you say:
6 " A flute can in some cases be in excess of
7 100 miles."

8 A Yes.

9 Q What is the average length
10 as far as you're concerned, of a flute?

11 A I wouldn't venture a guess.

12 Q Well on the east of the
13 Franklins route, you've done a certain amount of
14 studying. Now how long would the average flute be down
15 there, are you in a position to say?

16 A Oh, I would make a guess
17 at anywhere from 50 to 70 miles long, each individual
18 flute.

19 Q Were you here yesterday,
20 sir, for Dr. Rutter's evidence?

21 A No, I was not.

22 Q Well, during cross-examination
23 ation by Mr. Scott I believe he made the statement that
24 the average length of flute in the east of the Franklins
25 route was one mile. You evidently disagree with
26 that statement, do you?

27 A I don't necessarily dis-
28 agree with it, but I think that Dr. Rutter was probably
29 talking about a different area.

30 Q Well, his address was on

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Hollingworth

1 the southern portion of the east of the Franklins
2 route, that is to say going up to a point about equal
3 to Wrigley or so.

4 A That's correct.

5 Q Then south.

6 A But Dr. Rutter's zone,
7 which has been referred to as east of the Franklins
8 in his evidence, is quite a bit west of the east of
9 the Franklins corridor that is outlined in my evidence.

10 Q Well, how far west is it
11 your route?

12 A The east of the Franklin
13 corridor in my evidence is well east of Dr. Rutter's
14 area that he was talking about.

15 Q Well east of it?

16 A East of it.

17 Q Well, how far apart are
18 they?

19 A I've never measured them
20 actually, but I would guess they are within ranges
21 from anywhere from 10 to 50 miles.

22 Q Well, the difference in
23 length of flutes go from one mile to 50 to 75 miles
24 in that distance, does it?

25 A Yes, these glacial
26 flutings are spectacular features. There are no similar
27 features anywhere that I am aware of in Northern Canada.

28 MR. ANTHONY: Mr. Commis-
29 sioner, since we don't have the value of a transcript
30 I relied on Dr. Rutter's recollection. I may be corrected

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Hollingworth

1 but I think he makes the point of a distinction between:
2 the different routings, and his recollection of his
3 evidence was an average of six or seven miles, and
4 again drawing distinctions that one is farther east
5 than the other.

6 MR. HOLLINGWORTH: I'm just
7 trying to find that.

8 THE COMMISSIONER: I think
9 what he said was the average was a mile or mile and
10 a half,,and the longest was something like eight.

11 MR. HOLLINGWORTH: That's
12 definitely what my handwritten notes say, sir.

13 THE COMMISSIONER: But at
14 any rate, Dr. Roed says he's talking about a different
15 area. Yours is the edge of the Shield, is that the
16 --

17 A No.

18 Q -- it looks like it is
19 more than 10 miles away, it looks like it's something
20 like 100 or 200, just looking at this map.

21 MR. HOLLINGWORTH: Well, Mr.
22 Commissioner, I was comparing Dr. Roed's east of the
23 Franklins route with Dr. Rutter's east of the Franklins
24 route.

25 THE COMMISSIONER: Oh, I see.
26 Sorry, sorry.

27 MR. HOLLINGWORTH: Now, Mr.
28 Commissioner and Dr. Roed, if I could refer you to
29 page 11431 of the transcript, questions put by
30 Mr. Scott:

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Hollingworth

1 "What is the average? It would be a pretty remote
2 possibility, wouldn't it?"

3 He's speaking of the length
4 of the flute.

5 Answer:

6 "Well the average, no, well the average length
7 of the flute, you could say on a mile, a mile
8 and a half or something of this nature, or less.
9 You get on some flutes that are very extensive
10 outside the area. They vary in size and I
11 don't think saying the average really helps you."

12 THE COMMISSIONER: What page
13 was that again?

14 MR. HOLLINGWORTH: 11431 to-
15 ward the top.

16 Q Dr. Roed, in your
17 testimony you seem to have conducted somewhat different
18 methods for examining the two different routes. Am
19 I correct in that, you had different materials to
20 examine comparing the edge of the Shield to the east
21 of the Franklins route?

22 A Only in that there was
23 information available for the east of the Franklins
24 route.

25 Q Well, did you look at
26 air photographic material for the east of the Franklins
27 route?

28 A Just in selected localities

29 Q And you did the same for
30 the edge of the Shield route?

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Hollingworth

1 A Yes.

2 Q And you also looked at
3 ERTS imagery and published information?

4 A That is correct.

5 Q And that's the extent of
6 your research?

7 A That's correct.

8 Q And the published informa-
9 tion is all listed in the appendix to your submission
10 to the Inquiry?

11 A That's correct. Of
12 course it is also based on my experience in the North-
13 west Territories. I might point out also with regard to
14 the granular surveys, this was done specifically for the
15 east of the Franklin route by our staff, and that
16 included a photo interpretation of almost the complete
17 route, but that was strictly from the standpoint of
18 location of sand and gravel deposits.

19 Q Is this the staff of
20 Geotechnic?

21 A Geoconsult.

22 Q Sorry, Geoconsult, and
23 who is on that staff?

24 A The person that did the
25 interpretation was Janet Drysdale, Bachelor of Science,
26 who has a field experience in the Northwest Territories

27 Q I see, so the reference
28 to the staff is to Miss Drysdale.

29 A In this particular case,
30 yes.

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Hollingworth

1 Q All right. Now on page
2 4 of the evidence in the introductory paragraph, you're
3 talking about the inappropriateness of the Mackenzie
4 Valley, and you say:

5 "The reasons for this may be numerous, but
6 emphasis is placed here on terrain sensitivity."
7 Now, we've already gone into what your report accentuates.
8 But when you make that statement "may be numerous" I
9 take it you have no proof that there are any other
10 reasons except from a terrain point of view.

11 A We have limited our work
12 to the terrain, and there are many other potential
13 constraints in comparison with Mackenzie Valley and
14 east of the Franklins, I just wanted to make clear that
15 we have not dealt with these.

16 Q And none that you're
17 prepared to discuss.

18 A Not at this particular
19 point in time.

20 Q Would you be prepared to
21 later?

22 A I certainly would be if
23 the recommendations of my report are followed and the
24 suggested attention to the proposed corridors that I
25 have outlined have been studied in the detail that I
26 have recommended before there is final approval of an
27 oil pipeline, or a pipeline down the Mackenzie River
28 Valley.

29 Q So you'd be prepared to
30 discuss it if you did this further work?

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Hollingworth

1 A That is correct.

2 Q I see. In that same

3 paragraph^{when} you speak of the alternate route possibilities
4 offering improved construction conditions. Exactly
5 which improved construction conditions are you referring
6 to?

7 A The improved construction
8 conditions relate to the terrain sensitivity.

9 Q But it doesn't relate to
10 construction logistics.

11 A It does not relate to
12 construction logistics.

13 Q Well, just out of interest
14 on page 5 here, you're speaking of an all-Canadian
15 Winnipeg to Montreal pipeline route through Northern
16 Ontario. Exactly what are you speaking of here?

17 A I'm speaking of some
18 consideration that has been given of an oil pipeline
19 route from Winnipeg to Montreal through Canada alone
20 and not going down into the United States, and con-
21 structed through pre-Cambrian terrain -- much of it,
22 that is -- of Northern Ontario, north of the Great Lakes.

23 Q There's already a pipeline
24 through Northern Ontario.

25 A There is a gas pipeline.

26 Q Well, that's what we're
27 speaking of here, in this Inquiry, isn't it?

28 A No. Pardon?

29 Q We're speaking of a gas
30 pipeline at this Inquiry,

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Hollingworth

1 A Yes, we are, yes.

2 Q I see, so when you make
3 that reference you're really thinking of an oil pipeline
4 down the edge of the Shield.

5 A What I'm thinking of
6 when I mentioned that, I was thinking of the edge of
7 the Shield corridor, the general classification of
8 a zone where perhaps more than one utility could be
9 placed.

10 Q All right, and further
11 down that page you're talking about passing within 100
12 miles of Brandon, a major distribution centre, and I
13 was just wondering what particular advantage there was
14 of passing within 100 miles of Brandon, Manitoba?

15 A Well, from the standpoint
16 of the overview treatment given in this Inquiry, my
17 evidence, I mention it because there is the flexibility,
18 I would think at this stage, to tie in directly with
19 Brandon because it is a major distribution centre of
20 oil and gas pipelines.

21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

1 Q Well, I suggest to
2 you, sir, that if the present configuration was used,
3 that is going down to the vicinity of Calgary and then
4 west along existing TransCanada line, that you would
5 go right through Brandon, that might be even better
6 than coming a hundred miles from it.

7 A Well, that is correct,
8 but if the Edge of the Shield corridor is located
9 along the edge of the Shield in that general area,
10 then it would be a mere one hundred miles to connect
11 with any transportation system at Brandon, if that
12 desire was there. That is the only point that I would
13 like to make there.

14 Q Well, now, looking at
15 this map that is in red and gray, and I forget which
16 figure number that is, figure one, I think, it appears
17 that the Edge of the Shield route goes from the
18 southeast corner of Wood Buffalo National Park diagonally
19 southeast into Saskatchewan. I presume it goes in
20 more or less a straight line from there to 100 miles
21 from Brandon, is that correct?

22 A That is correct, but I
23 wish to emphasize that the main part of my evidence
24 is related to north of 60 parallel.

25 Q Yes, but conceptually
26 this would be your theory south of the 60th parallel.

27 A Conceptually, yes.

28 Q And this would involve
29 an entirely new pipeline, for either gas or oil.
30

1 A It would involve an
2 entirely new corridor, yes.

3 Q And a new pipeline.

4 A Yes.

5 Q So that the existing
6 facilities which are presently in Alberta and part of
7 the TransCanada line would just go wasted under this
8 conception. .

9 MR. ANTHONY: You are
10 referring to the portion now from Calgary to Brandon,
11 are you?

12 MR. HOLLINGWORTH: I am
13 referring to the portion of Rainbow Lake down to
14 Calgary and over to Brandon.

15 A I understand that new
16 pipeline facilities are going to be required in
17 any event.

18 Q Well, there is going to
19 be looping required. Do you understand that there is
20 going to be anything beyond looping required?

21 A Well, yes, I understood
22 that there is an entirely different line.

23 Q An entirely new line
24 from --

25 A That is right --

26 Q --Rainbow to Brandon,
27 this is what you understand?

28 A Oh, no, not to Brandon.

29 Q Where to?

30 A Well, to -- I just forget

1 the name of the town --

2 Q Was it Emerson, maybe ?

3 A In Alberta?

4 Q No, Emerson, Manitoba.

5 A I am thinking of CAGSL
6 route.

7 Q Well, I realize that

8 A Well, I understand they
9 are going to need new pipe, a completely different
10 pipeline.

11 Q Well, this is a point of
12 difference between Mr. Carter and myself, but I think
13 he will agree with me that the Arctic Gas scheme
14 doesn't call for anything beyond looping of the
15 TransCanada line from Calgary to Brandon.

16 A Oh, yes, all right, yes
17 I understand.

18 Q You will agree with
19 that.

20 A Yes.

21 Q So you will agree with
22 my statement that you are calling for a brand new
23 line where none is presently called for now.

24 A A new corridor, yes,
25 right.

26 Q And a new line.

27 A Right.

28 Q Now, just discussing
29 Wood Buffalo National Park, perhaps you could give
30 me some detail as to where exactly your corridor goes

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Hollingworth

1 once it gets to the south side of Great Slave Lake,
2 from there to, let's say, Fort Chipewyan.

3 A There are many options
4 and I have on the basis of the existing information
5 that I have presented to this require, have attempted
6 to outline a zone or a corridor along which detailed
7 studies so I could answer your question, could be
8 -- well, could be answered, could be dealt with.

9 Q As I understand
10 this corridor now, it appears to go south along the
11 boundary of Wood Buffalo Park and along the shores
12 of the river past Fort Smith and then south to Fort
13 Chipewyan. Is that a fair assumption?

14 A Generally, yes.

15 Q So that following the
16 river valley that you previously said is unsatisfactory.

17 A This is in Precambrian
18 Shield terrain which is considerably different than
19 the terrain in the Mackenzie Valley, there is no
20 way that you can compare the two.

21 Q So that it would be
22 satisfactory to go along the river in this kind of
23 terrain, is that your evidence?

24 A No, that is not my
25 evidence. My evidence is that this is a zone that
26 requires further detail.

27 Q Have you had any discussions
28 with the National Parks as to their feelings of a
29 pipeline corridor going down the boundary of Wood
30 Buffalo Park?

1 A Well, for the information
2 of this Inquiry, yes, I have talked to park officials
3 and they are certainly interested in the developments
4 that are being considered in the Northwest Territories.

5 I have talked to them, yes.

6 Q Have you had any corres-
7 pondence with them on paper?

8 A No, I have not.

9 Q Now, on the crossing of
10 the Great Bear and the Great Slave that you have
11 proposed for the Edge of the Shield, you have stated
12 in evidence that the depth would not exceed 300 feet
13 and I assume you made studies of something to arrive
14 at this, have you?

15 A That is correct.

16 There is information available
17 in the Department of Mines and Technical Surveys of
18 piezometric surveys of both lakes.

19 Q And do these studies
20 also show the dropoffs from one depth to the next, if
21 you like?

22 A The studies are general
23 in nature. There are no details provided in my
24 evidence to answer that question.

25 Q So if for instance the depth
26 of Great Bear suddenly went from 50 feet down a sheer
27 cliff to 200 feet, you don't really know that that
28 exists, do you?

29 A That is correct, except
30 that I have indicated that studies on bottom morphology

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Hollingworth

1 and bottom sediments would have to be done in connection
2 with any idea of laying pipe along the bottom of those
3 lakes.

4 Q Do you have any information
5 or studies as to what the nature of the bottoms of
6 these lakes is now, any at all?

7 A I do not have any
8 except what is on the maps, and they are general.

9 Q Do the maps indicate
10 whether the bottoms of these lakes freeze or what kind
11 of materials they are?

12 A No, they don't.

13 Q So you don't know if
14 there are going to be frost heave problems or anything
15 of that nature on the bottoms of these lakes.

16 A Well, just a general
17 knowledge. I am sure that Great Bear and Great
18 Slave do not freeze to a depth of 300 feet.

19 Q And have you studied the
20 construction cost that might be involved with these
21 methods of construction?

22 A No, I have not.

23 Q Have you any idea at all
24 on how much the construction would cost as opposed
25 to crossing land?

26 A No, I do not.

27 Q So, if I suggested to
28 you that it would be in the neighbourhood of three
29 times the cost, would you be in a position to
30 disagree with me?

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Hollingworth

1 A No, I would not.

2 MR. ANTHONY: I wonder,
3 Mr. Commissioner, if it wouldn't assist the Inquiry
4 if Mr. Hollingworth has such studies that indicate
5 that and I am wondering if he could make that available
6 to us and maybe we can discuss the question further
7 when we get into discussions of corridors.

8 MR. HOLLINGWORTH: I have
9 no written studies, Mr. Commissioner.

10 THE COMMISSIONER: No studies
11 that show that Great Bear freezes to a depth of
12 300 feet.

13 MR. HOLLINGWORTH: Certainly
14 not.

15 THE COMMISSIONER: It is
16 unlikely that there would be permafrost under either
17 of those lakes, isn't it?

18 A Gee, well, I really
19 wouldn't comment on that because we are finding permafrost
20 in the most unusual localities. I certainly would
21 keep an open mind on that.

22 MR. HOLLINGWORTH: Well, in
23 any event, I think you are speaking of laying the
24 pipe on the bed of the lake and not burying the pipe,
25 aren't you?

26 A That is correct.

27 Q Now, on the East of the
28 Franklins corridor, you talk about two major river
29 crossings, and that is the Great Bear River and the
30 Mackenzie River at Fort Providence, but isn't there

1 another one? If you have got to get gas from Richards
2 Island to your East of the Franklins route, don't you
3 have to cross the Mackenzie again?

4 A The evidence that I have
5 presented starts at Sitidgi Lake and goes south.

6 Q Well, would you go so
7 far as to agree with me that if the gas is on
8 Richards Island it would require a major river crossing
9 there just as there is one now, to get over to your
10 route?

11 A Perhaps I would, but
12 in the light of my other -- my knowledge about the
13 Mackenzie Delta and getting gas out of it, I
14 feel the knowledge of that whole ^{general} area is at a very
15 early stage with regard to a gas gathering system,
16 and that is a very complex problem. I simply think
17 it is an entirely different subject and certainly
18 not related to my evidence.

19 Q Well, why is it complex?
20 If you have got gas on an island and you have to get
21 off the island onto the mainland, don't you have to
22 make the river crossing?

23 A Well, I just want to
24 repeat that I am not here to comment on the Mackenzie
25 Delta. I am here to comment and give evidence on
26 potential alternate routes from Sitidgi Lake to the
27 60th parallel.

28 Q Well, Dr. Poed, you have
29 given evidence of where the main gas bearing sediments
30 are in the area around the Beaufort Sea. Now, the

1 gas that has been discovered is basically on Richards
2 Island, do you agree with that?

3 A Yes.

4 Q And don't you agree with
5 me that to get from Richard's Island to where your
6 route commences you have got to cross the Mackenzie
7 River.

8 A It would seem that way,
9 yes.

10 Q So you have got a
11 third major river crossing on your East of the Franklins
12 Route,

13 A No, I do not have a
14 third major river crossing on East of the Franklins
15 Route. The East of the Franklins Route stops at
16 Sitidqi. What you do beyond Sitidqi is an entirely
17 different study, an entirely different area of
18 influence from a terrain standpoint.

19 Q Now, on page 8 you make
20 the statement that service to communities would be
21 less from your -- I believe it is Edge of the Shield
22 Route.

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Hollingworth

1 Yes, it is. Are you making
2 the statement that you do in paragraph 8.3 of your
3 evidence on the basis of looking at a map and examin-
4 ing distances, or have you made any greater study
5 than that?

6 A I have not made any
7 greater study than that.

8 Q And in any event, that
9 cost could be offset by the greater cost to the mainline
10 down the corridor.

11 A I haven't studied that
12 either.

13 Q Now, it appears that
14 this report which you distributed yesterday has some
15 figures in it on logistics.

16 A Yes.

17 Q And this is part of
18 your evidence, is it, that you have given before the
19 Inquiry, or do you intend it to be part of your
20 evidence?

21 A It was designed or done
22 to back up a general comparison with regard to
23 logistics, and it is simply backup research material.

24 Q Well, did you consult
25 any studies other than those listed in your list of
26 reports to come up with these figures?

27 A Yes I did.

28 Q And can you produce those
29 documents?

30 A Yes, I can.

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Hollingworth

1 Q Can your counsel under-
2 take to do that for you?

3 MR. ANTHONY: Yes. As I
4 understand, you're enquiring whether any further study
5 beyond those listed were done on the logistics question.

6 MR. HOLLINGWORTH: That's
7 correct. Now Mr. Anthony, I wonder if I might confirm
8 at this time that you're prepared to bring Dr. Roed
9 back to be further cross-examined on the new material
10 which was presented yesterday that was over and above
11 the material forwarded to the participants at an earlier
12 date?

13 MR. ANTHONY: Well, I think as
14 I made it clear, yesterday the information that's
15 available there was prepared as backup information so
16 that any questions raised could have some source of
17 knowledge rather than the usual case where the witness
18 presents a statement and says, "There are studies
19 that are available" to him.

20 Now if my friend feels that
21 somehow he can't handle that material and wants Dr.
22 Roed back, then I'm prepared to call him back. But
23 I'm not going to undertake to bring him back unless
24 my friends feel they are unable to cross-examine at this
25 time.

26 MR. HOLLINGWORTH: Well, Mr.
27 Commissioner, yesterday Mr. Anthony raised the point
28 that there was a draft appendix to the report filed
29 by Dr. Roed, which delved into environmental issues,
30 and he's quite right, there is. He didn't mention that

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Hollingworth

1 there was, further material on the logistics of the
2 construction plan, and it came as a bit of a surprise
3 to me to read it last night, and frankly, I would
4 like the opportunity to have my advisors look through
5 this material, and if in fact they feel some cross-
6 examination is warranted, then I just want it to be
7 clear that Dr. Roed is prepared to re-attend.

8 MR. ANTHONY: Well certainly,
9 if on the basis of the logistic study and other studies
10 that are there, there's a request to bring him back I
11 will bring him back at a convenient time.

12 THE COMMISSIONER: All right,
13 fine.

14 MR. ANTHONY: I want to make it
15 clear that the environmental part we do not propose to
16 call Dr. Roed or necessarily anybody to give evidence
17 on the environmental --

18 THE COMMISSIONER: Well you're
19 not relying on that?

20 MR. ANTHONY: That's correct.

21 THE COMMISSIONER: So it is
22 as if it didn't exist. You don't even want me to
23 read it.

24 MR. ANTHONY: That's correct.
25 It's presented only as it was part of a total report
26 that was -- had to be cut back, and we were unable to --
27 THE COMMISSIONER: Yes. Well at
28 any rate at this stage of the game you're saying that
29 you don't even wish me to read that environmental
30 assessment in that report.

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Hollingworth

1 MR. ANTHONY: I'm not present-
2 ing the environmental section of that report as
3 evidence before the Inquiry.

4 THE COMMISSIONER: All right,
5 so --

6 MR. HOLLINGWORTH: That's the
7 Appendix "E", Mr. Anthony, the environmental overview
8 of east of the Franklins route and comparisons to
9 the Mackenzie Valley route.

10 MR. ANTHONY: That's correct.

11 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, let's
12 stop for coffee. Is that all right, Mr. Hollingworth?

13 MR. HOLLINGWORTH: That's fine.

14 (PROCEEDINGS ADJOURNED FOR A FEW MINUTES)

15 (PROCEEDINGS RESUMED PURSUANT TO ADJOURNMENT)

16 THE COMMISSIONER: Go ahead,
17 Mr. Hollingworth.

18 MR. HOLLINGWORTH: Mr.
19 Anthony has something to say.

20 MR. ANTHONY: Mr. Commissioner,
21 before we proceed, it appeared from conversations
22 during the break, there was a distinction between the
23 evidence of Dr. Rutter and Dr. Roed about the location
24 and size of flutes which left some people in some
25 confusion. Perhaps Mr. Hollingworth, perhaps not; and
26 I thought it may assist the Inquiry if Dr. Roed just
27 clarified his evidence as it relates to Dr. Rutter,
28 in case Mr. Hollingworth wishes to pursue the question
29 further.

30 THE COMMISSIONER: O.K., go

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Hollingworth

1 ahead, sir.

2 A Well, just briefly I'd
3 like to point out that the area that Dr. Rutter was
4 reporting on is just to the west of the fluted range
5 that I am talking about along the east of the Franklins
6 route and in that area the flutes^{are} of the size that
7 Dr. Rutter has indicated; but along the east of the
8 Franklins route which I am presenting, the flutes are
9 in the order -- some are -- 100 miles long. I would
10 like to reaffirm the evidence that we have presented
11 in a report, my testimony, that the flutes are as
12 I have outlined them.

13 One other thing, these are
14 fluted moraine, individual ridges can be distinguished
15 on the ERTS aerial photograph which is behind me here,
16 and I'd be happy to outline a number of flutes that
17 are in the order of 100 miles long at the convenience
18 of anyone who is interested.

19 THE COMMISSIONER: Fine, thank
20 you.

21 A I also have a magnifying
22 glass for anyone who needs it.

23 MR. HOLLINGWORTH: Q Dr. Roed,
24 on page 6 at the top of your evidence, you state that:

25 "There is more abundant construction material
26 throughout its entire length compared to the
27 Mackenzie Valley corridor,"

28 and I think you're referring there to the edge of the
29 Shield route. What construction material are you
30 referring to there?

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Hollingworth

1 A Sand and gravel.

2 Q Gravel, did you say?

3 A Sand and gravel, yes.

4 Q Now, when you put together
5 the construction figures and when you made the statements
6 you have in the prepared evidence, had you previously
7 obtained any views from pipeline contractors?

8 A No, I hadn't.

9 Q Have you obtained views
10 from any contractors?

11 A No, I haven't.

12 Q As I understand you, on
13 the east of the Franklins route at least, am I correct
14 in saying that you haven't worked out logistics for
15 an edge of the Shield?

16 A That is true.

17 Q For the east of the Fran-
18 klins you're talking about access points at Providence,
19 up the Great Bear River, and at the northern end of
20 the route around Sitidgi Lake.

21 A Major staging area.

22 Q Major staging area.

23 A There is one other one
24 up to Rory Lake area.

25 Q And how would access be
26 gained to that staging site?

27 A Winter road along the
28 valley.

29 Q Winter road, is that
30 through a pass or over the mountains?

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Hollingworth

1 A That's through a pass.

2 Q How high is that pass?

3 A It's not a pass, it's

4 a valley.

5 Q I see, and how high above
6 sea level does it get?

7 A Well, I don't know. It's
8 you know, a general plan that was presented.

9 Q I see, and how long would
10 that road have to be from the Mackenzie River to the
11 staging area?

12 A We can measure it on the
13 map, but --

14 Q Well, do you have an
15 approximate figure?

16 A I think about 20 miles.
17 20 or 30 miles or so.

18 Q So that of course you'd
19 really have to have two staging areas because the pipe
20 and other material comes down the river or up the
21 river in summer, and then you'd have to leave it there
22 until you got your winter road built, and then transport
23 it in on these trucks

24 A That's correct.

25 Q All right, and am I
26 correct, did I interpret you correctly as saying that
27 you're speaking of trucks that can carry ten 40-foot
28 joints of pipe?

29 A I understand that's what
30 is being employed along the Alyeska Pipeline route at

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Hollingworth

1 the present time.

2 Q And that's what you're
3 considering here?

4 A Correct

5 Q And have you looked into
6 how much that will weigh?

7 A No, I haven't. I know
8 that they are transporting these pipes using two
9 40foot carriers behind the tractor.

10 Q On the Alyeska line?

11 A Yes.

12 Q Is this in one of the
13 reports that you're going to produce?

14 A No, that's just general
15 knowledge.

16 Q Did you take into con-
17 sideration any environmental issues, and particularly
18 living environmental issues, in coming up with the
19 corridors which you have?

20 A Just on an indirect --
21 in an indirect manner. We primarily looked at the
22 terrain.

23 Q Well then, I suppose
24 you're aware that the logical northerly extension of
25 your east of the Franklins route goes through the middle
26 of the reindeer grazing reserve.

27
28
29
30

1 A That is a good example,
2 yes.

3 Q I suppose you are aware too
4 that your Edge of the Shield corridor goes through
5 the grazing area of the Bluenose Caribou herd.

6 A That is correct.

7 Q And so that the state-
8 ments you made to the Canadian Society of Petroleum
9 Geologists and Exploration Geophysicists were not
10 quite accurate when you said that you would go
11 around the Bluenose herd with your Edge of the
12 Shield Corridor.

13 A Well, the detailed
14 distribution of the herd's route, migration and so on,
15 would be a subject of fairly intensive analysis and
16 further choosing the appropriateness of either one
17 of these routes.

18 Q Well, let me get this
19 straight. You recall your address to the Society of
20 Petroleum Geologists and Exploration Geophysicists?

21 A Yes.

22 Q And that was made on
23 May 23rd in Calgary of this year.

24 A Yes.

25 Q And correct me if I am
26 wrong, but I am reading from page 6 of your preliminary
27 draft, and this was evidently distributed to the
28 participants, and you say there, quote:

29 "The only caribou herd infringed upon is
30 the small Bluenose herd north of Great Bear

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Hollingworth

1 Lake and the route is substantially east
2 of its common range".

3 Do I understand you now to be changing that testimony,
4 or changing that view?

5 A No, I am not changing
6 it. I just have not included it in the evidence
7 for this Inquiry because I am restricting my evidence
8 to the physical resources and terrain sensitivity .

9 Q Well, do you feel capable
10 of commenting on that statement at this time ?

11 A My statement stands,
12 that is exactly -- I do have the publication available
13 if you would like it.

14 Q I would like it if your
15 counsel could produce it, yes, sir.

16 A Fine.

17 Q Now, what do you mean
18 by a "small" herd?

19 A Well, it's, you know, it
20 is a smaller herd -- it is about the smallest herd
21 in the area, in the whole region.

22 Q Well, are you aware
23 how big it is?

24 A No, I don't

25 Q And you still maintain
26 that your route would cross substantially east of
27 its common range, do you?

28 A That is right. East of the
29 Edge of the Shield Route, yes.

30 Q All right.

1 MR. HOLLINGWORTH: Those are
2 all the questions that I have.

3 THE COMMISSIONER: Mr. Carter.
4 CROSS-EXAMINATION BY MR. CARTER:

5 Q Dr. Roeds, if I could
6 refer you to the first page of your direct evidence,
7 in the third paragraph toward the bottom, you refer
8 to "the compendium of inevitable developement interactives
9 that follow the leader."

10 Now, that is quite a mouthful,
11 but I think that I understand what you are saying,
12 your concept; and I wonder if you have an example of
13 that particular concept, where that has occurred?

14 A Well, the example that
15 comes to mind right away is -- take the TransCanada
16 Highway and the railroad that goes through Banff
17 National Park, for example.

18 Q Have you an example where
19 a gas pipeline went into an area and was the leader --

20 THE COMMISSIONER: Excuse me,
21 Mr. Carter, I am sorry, that example you gave, what is
22 the point -- that the railway was built and then the
23 highway followed the route of the railway, is that
24 what happened?

25 A That is basically what
26 happened, yes, and you have a lot of other things
27 happening in the area to capitalize off various
28 resources that are connected to the valley.

29 THE COMMISSIONER: Yes, carry
30 on, Mr. Carter.

1 MR. CARTER: I wonder, sir ,
2 if you can think of an example where a gas pipeline
3 was the leader and these other things followed?

4 A I don't believe I
5 can, not offhand.

6 Q Do you consider that
7 this concept applies to the present case that we are
8 considering, namely the Arctic Gas and Foothills
9 proposals?

10 A In relation to the terrain
11 sensitivity and the resources that are available along
12 the Mackenzie River Valley, yes, I do.

13 Q I wonder, sir, if I can
14 suggest a different idea and ask you to comment on it
15 and that is in the case of each of these routes following
16 the Mackenzie Valley, that there is in fact already
17 an existing corridor and this started because of nature
18 and the river and following that there is the barging
19 system and then CN's Telecommunication system, winter
20 roads, air routes, airports, highway under construction,

21 A What is the question?

22 Q Well, the question is
23 in light of that do you still feel that Arctic Gas and
24 Foothills Pipe Line would be the leader in this
25 valley?

26 A Insomuch as it's the
27 leader of human activity, yes. The Mackenzie Valley is a
28 natural waterway and that is very clear, it is a
29 natural corridor to the Arctic Ocean, but man has the
30 ability, either to use it wisely or not, and that is the

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Carter

1 fundamental difference in the Mackenzie Valley route
2 as opposed to the East of the Franklins or the Edge
3 of the Shield, the alternatives that are being put
4 before this Inquiry. We are the humans that are
5 attempting to evaluate the resources, socio-economic
6 implications of all of these alternates and not
7 necessarily following nature, but trying to determine
8 nature's sensitivities and conforming our activities
9 to them.

10 Q Well, maybe I didn't un-
11 derstand then what you meant by these words. I had
12 thought that what you were saying, and one of the other
13 terms you use, is a single facility is established, once
14 a single facility is established. Once you get
15 this pipeline and it is the first thing, a lot of
16 things are going to follow, and I was suggesting to
17 you that we already have a lot of other things that
18 exist in the Mackenzie Valley that in fact your
19 concept is not applicable to it.

20 A Well, we certainly have
21 a river which is a natural waterway and we have
22 settlements along the river. Insofar as that is concerned,
23 yes, I would agree with you. But with respect to
24 actually developing that river valley, that is, as
25 people trying to utilize the land and resources in
26 this manner, I feel that the Mackenzie Valley is
27 quite inappropriate from that standpoint, but in
28 comparison with the East of the Franklins, and the
29 Edge of the Shield Route.

30 Q I take it you say that

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Carter

1 because you feel that looking at the north as a whole,
2 the resource potential is better on the East of the
3 Shield Route.

4 A I would think so.

5 Q And by resources there
6 you mean hard minerals in particular?

7 A I think there are two
8 aspects to the resources of the land terrain sensi-
9 tivity compared to the Mackenzie Valley and also
10 the ultimate possibilities of development of
11 the Edge of the Shield mineral potential.

12 THE COMMISSIONER: Excuse me,
13 Dr. Roed. Would you mind using the table mike instead
14 of the hand mike, because it is easier for the court
15 reporters to hear what you are saying. I am sorry
16 to interrupt you.

17 A It wasn't working a
18 few minutes ago, sorry.

19 MR. CARTER: Okay, so you
20 say that the mineral development -- I take it you
21 are using mineral in the sense of minerals other
22 than oil and gas.

23 A That is correct.

24 Q I take it that you
25 don't consider that the pipeline in itself ought to
26 be built where minerals other than oil and gas occur
27 to develop those minerals but it must be something
28 else, and I think, you state in your evidence a
29 railroad is the most obvious and also a highway. In
30 other words, a gas pipeline is for natural gas and it

1 doesn't really help you a lot to get hard minerals
2 out of a particular area. You need highways or a
3 railroad.

4 A That is right, but the
5 Mackenzie Valley route, there was a highway planned
6 there anyway and the principle here is that sooner
7 or later it is felt that the possibility of developing
8 the Edge of the Shield mineral potential is going
9 to be presented before the people of Canada.

10 Well, my theses there is
11 simply that perhaps to avoid building two major
12 transportation routes to northern Canada resource
13 centres, perhaps we should just consider one which
14 is located in the best overall place which is the
15 Edge of the Shield.

16 Q And as I understood
17 from your background, you had a particular interest
18 and history in that area.

19 A That is correct.

20 Q Now, if I could turn
21 to your Edge of the Shield again and your starting
22 point, you state that it starts at the geographic
23 centre of the Mackenzie Sedimentary Basin, and I
24 believe my friend, Mr. Hollingworth, referred to
25 this as well.

26 Do you in coming up with
27 your starting point for the Edge of the Shield corridor,
28 you look more at the sedimentary basin rather than
29 where the studies have been to date.
30

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Carter

1 A Yes sir.

2 Q So that as far as you
3 know, there would be no discoveries of natural gas on
4 Banks Island or the Tuk Peninsula east of Parsons
5 Lake field.

6 A That's right.

7 Q Are you aware of the
8 applications that the producing companies, Imperial,
9 Gulf and Shell, have filed where they intend to
10 have their feeder lines and gasplants?

11 A No, I'm not.

12 Q I take it that as your
13 edge of the Shield route continues on south, the
14 main reason or at least one of the main reasons that
15 you prefer it to the Mackenzie Valley route is because
16 the terrain is better, and you say that because
17 generally you expect less ice will be encountered.

18 A I would expect so, yes.

19 Q Have you any field evi-
20 dence on which you base that opinion?

21 A No, I do not.

22 Q If I could turn then to
23 the mile by mile routing of this edge of the Shield
24 route, on page 6 you start with your first section,
25 Mile 0 to Mile 25, and this is the crossing from the
26 Tuk Peninsula to the mainland east of the Anderson
27 River, that's principally a water crossing and I
28 intend to deal with the water crossings later, so if
29 I could move onto your next section, Mile 25 to Mile
30 100. I take it that it's your position that the

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Carter

1 terrain in this area is relatively ice-free.

2 A No, it is not.

3 I think that I've indicated that the first 15 miles
4 is particularly severe, from the information that I
5 have.

6 Q And what about the
7 balance?

8 A It's all in a zone of
9 permafrost, permanent permafrost, and I would expect
10 that the ice conditions would be -- reflect its
11 presence. However, the nature of the materials indicates
12 in general that there is a good possibility that you
13 may find minimal ice conditions in the surficial
14 deposits there.

15 Q Well, I'm just not
16 clear. You say:

17 "overall but east of the Shield route is
18 going to be better because it's going to
19 encounter less ice content in the terrain."

20 Is the section that we're dealing with now, Mile 25
21 to Mile 100, an exception to that?

22 A No, the northern section
23 in the permafrost, permanent permafrost zone, these
24 comments apply to that general area; but the longest
25 part of the section, I believe, is in the discontinuous
26 ^{which is} zone south of Great Bear Lake.

27 Q We've drawn a rough map
28 of your route, and Mile 100, which is the furthest
29 southerly point in the section I'm dealing with, is
30 at approximately a river called the West River. Now

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Carter

1 your comments about the high ice content, because of the
2 permafrost, do they not apply that far south?

3 A I would expect that we
4 could locate the general corridor in that entire
5 area from, apart from this difficult area near the
6 coast, right down to the Great Bear Lake, in terrain
7 which has the greatest possibility of low ice content.

8 Q You've given a number of
9 references in this section, again talking about
10 Mile 25 to Mile 100, and one of these is, Yorath
11 if you could look at your direct evidence, sir, Yorath
12 is cited and the year that's given is 1959. I wonder
13 if that should not be 1969?

14 A Oh yes, of course, that's
15 - yes, it is, sorry.

16 Q And do you conclude
17 anything from his report about the ice content of the
18 area?

19 A No, I do not, except
20 from the standpoint of general regional conditions,
21 the area generally speaking is a till covered upland
22 underlain by presumably this gravel layer in many places,
23 which again is underlain by the pale shale zone rocks.
24 Just the character, the general character of that upland
25 has in comparison to, for example, an area that has
26 substantial glaciolacustrine silt and clay in it,
27 and which is a lowland like the Mackenzie River, in
28 comparison the chances of ice accumulation are quite
29 significantly reduced in an upland area, as compared
30 to the Mackenzie Valley area, which is the principal

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Carter

1 point, you know, the fundamental point in that
2 northern terrain.

3 Q Do you have any on-site
4 information apart from that in the literature that
5 you've given in these citations here?

6 A Just the evidence I
7 presented.

8 Q Now, one of the other
9 features that you refer to is the remarkable series
10 of abandoned strand lines, and I take it these are in
11 the area which we're talking about.

12 A Not necessarily. I mention
13 it in the context of very interesting terrain features
14 from an engineering viewpoint. I do believe they are
15 east of the edge of the Shield route, but their
16 delineation has not been complete.

17 Q Well, you're dealing with
18 the edge of the Shield route on a mile by mile basis,
19 and you refer to these strand lines, but I take it that
20 they're just added for information and that they don't
21 really exist in the area you're talking about.

22 A There is a possibility
23 that this, you know, ^{with} further definition that the
24 edge of the Shield route could be considerably altered
25 route on the basis of environmental considerations,
26 socio-economic considerations, or a number of other
27 considerations. I mention the strand lines because
28 they are a feature of that northern terrain along --
29 especially along the coast. My evidence does not suggest
30 that they are specifically in along this particular line

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Carter

1 that I described, I didn't intend for that to be --

2 Q I take it then you're
3 aware that in Craig's Report he says that there is no
4 evidence at all that they're in that area.

5 A In Craig's Report, in
6 that specific area, yes, but just to the east they are.

7 Q How far east?

8 A Well, 40 or 50 miles, I
9 can't remember exactly.

10 Q If I could move onto the
11 next section, and this is Mile 100 to Mile 250, you
12 refer to the Glacial Map of Canada, and relying on that,
13 state that it's an area of extensive and thick moraine
14 deposits.

15 A Yes.

16 Q Now, on that same map
17 -- this is the Glacial map of Canada, 1967 -- and
18 correct me if I'm wrong, the Tuk Peninsula around
19 Liverpool Bay area, the adjacent Tuk area, is
20 described in the same way, is that not correct?

21 A Excuse me. It is
22 described in the same way.

23 Q Now, what can you tell
24 us about the ice content of this area?

25 A I would expect you
26 would have the same kind of ice content as you would
27 in an area, and the same kind of materials along the
28 Mackenzie Valley route. The same possibility.
29
30

1 Q Are you aware that
2 recent work in the Tuk area that is described in the
3 same category in the glacial map has found that
4 these moraine deposits are ice-rich and that the
5 topography is largely the result of ice core hills
6 and depressions due to melting of ice?

7 A No, I am not familiar
8 with that specific detail of knowledge. I know that
9 there are ice-rich areas of the till in that general
10 region. ,

11 MR. ANTHONY: I wonder if
12 Mr. Carter can assist us in identifying that report and
13 perhaps making it available so that it can be
14 commented upon at a later date.

15 MR. CARTER: We can do that ,
16 sir.

17 MR. GOUDGE: Mr. Commissioner,
18 I am advised that Dr. Rampton's report done
19 for the Environmental Social Program, that contains
20 that information.

21 MR. ANTHONY: I believe that
22 is not correct.

23 THE COMMISSIONER: Dr. Rampton
24 is shaking his head.

25 MR. GOUDGE: I am sorry. I
26 apologize, sir.

27 MR. CARTER: It is another
28 report and we will get that, sir.

29 Q Now, the next section
30 on your mile by mile discussion is the crossing of the

1 Great Bear Lake and I will leave that until the dis-
2 cussion of the lakes later.

3 Then moving on, you have a
4 section from Mile 400 to Mile 700, and again , here,
5 you refer to the strand-lines, and I wonder if you
6 could tell me how much of the area between these
7 two mileposts you expect to be this type of material.

8 A Well, I can't tell you
9 that exactly, but what I can tell you is first of
10 all the entire area appears to be sandy in nature
11 due to deposition in Glacial Lake McConnel.
12 The strand-lines that I am referring to, for example
13 in the northern part, follow topographic provinces, they
14 are old beach lines and they follow the contours
15 of the land. So in the northern section, to follow
16 the really well developed strand-lines would be imprac-
17 tical from the stand point of pipeline construction,
18 however, there are other associated deposits, or
19 related deposits, surficial deposits, that could
20 be utilized, I believe.

21 Q Have you any ground
22 truth data on the ice content of this area?

23 A No, I do not.

24 Q In the next section
25 you arrive at Great Slave Lake. I would like to
26 ask you some questions and in these I am referring to
27 your lake and your water crossings as a whole.

28 You have told us about some
29 of the engineering developments with respect to water
30 crossings and have referred to a number of articles

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Carter

1 The North Sea, I take it, is the best example of the
2 present technology?

3 A Well, I would rather --
4 there are several different technical examples in
5 the papers. I am not here to pass judgment on the
6 best example of submarine technology.

7 Q You have read these
8 papers, I take it, that you --

9 A I have perused them,
10 yes. I have not studied them in detail.

11 Q Do you know what length
12 of pipeline they have underwater?

13 A I can't give you that
14 information offhand, no.

15 Q I take it that you
16 haven't done very much study then on this concept
17 of the water crossing of the lakes.

18 A That is correct. We
19 have done enough study for an overview analysis of
20 the alternate routes as proposed in this evidence.
21 We would envisage dealing with these details in later
22 phases of analysis, and I refer again to the planning
23 structure that I have outlined in my report and relate
24 that -- all my evidence is related to the first stage
25 of planning, that is, a general overview of the
26 broad area of the western Northwest Territories.

27 Q So you haven't done
28 more detailed examination of the problem of com-
29 pressor stations that would be required to get the
30 gas out --

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Carter

1 A That would be in follow
2 up stage of study, that is right.

3 Q Have you any estimate of
4 what length of time we'd be looking at before these
5 sort of developments could be brought to such a
6 stage that the project could be undertaken?

7 A Well , you mean to
8 bring it to final design stage?

9 Q Yes.

10 A All of the various
11 studies -- which route are you talking about?

12 Q Well, we have been
13 hearing evidence from the Arctic Gas witnesses
14 about the designs that they have for the pipeline
15 and they have stated that they feel it can
16 be built. I am just wondering how long in the
17 future we would be looking at before engineers
18 could say the same thing about crossing these
19 lakes.

20 A Yes, I understand.
21 Well, firstly, it depends on how many people you have
22 working on a project and how well it is organized.
23 There are so many ifs in a study like that. But
24 speaking of the East of the Franklins Route, as
25 compared to the Edge of the Shield Route, I think
26 that I can safely say that the East of the Franklins
27 Route could be evaluated in a much shorter time than
28 the Edge of the Shield Route.

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Carter

1 Q Is that principally
2 because of the problem with the lake?

3 A That's correct.

4 Q Now, --

5 A But not entirely, I
6 might add. The terrain along the east of the Franklins
7 route is in many ways ideal, and these fluted moraines
8 extend for a very, you know, extensive distance, and
9 we just don't have comparable features that are so
10 easy to work with along the edge of the Shield route.
11 So just by the very nature of the terrain, you're
12 certainly going to save a lot of time by going down
13 east of the Franklins.

14 Q I see. The examples you
15 gave of the North Sea I recall in particular, were
16 they all cases where it was necessary to get the gas
17 from the point where it was at to the point where it
18 would be used to cross the water? What I'm driving
19 at is, as you said in your evidence, you don't have
20 to go through Great Slave or Great Bear Lakes if you
21 go around them, but in the North Sea I take it that
22 they have to get the gas to the mainland and therefore
23 have to go through water. Is that a fair statement?

24 A Yes sir.

25 Q Why then do you propose
26 going across the lakes rather than around them?

27 A Well, I'm looking in
28 terms of the shortest distance between two points.

29 Q So that on the edge of
30 the Shield route it would be considerably further to

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Carter

1 go around the lakes.

2 A Very considerably.

3 Q And at least in the case
4 of Great Bear Lake you'd have to have some sort of a
5 road into there and around the other side of the lake
6 to bring the materials in. If I could move on then
7 to the east of the Franklins route, as I understand it,
8 the reason that you like this route is because of the
9 fluted moraine, the long flute that you referred to.

10 A It would appear to be an
11 excellent place to place a linear pipeline construction.

12 Q And again, as I understand
13 it, that's because the crest, at least, of the flute is
14 well-drained and therefore you expect that you will not
15 encounter very much ice.

16 A I expect that the ice
17 content will be minimal along the crest of the flutes.

18 Q But as yet you have no
19 ground proof data to confirm this.

20 A That's correct.

21 Q I'm advised, sir, that
22 for example, there is a D.P.W. borrow pit in Inuvik in
23 the crest of a drumlin and right in the crest there is
24 very ice-rich materials. Would that surprise you?

25 A No, it wouldn't. That is
26 in a permanent permafrost area .

27 Q I take it there's a differ-
28 ence between the fluted moraine further north and the
29 southern part.

30 A I would expect there would

M.A.Roed
Cross-Exam by Carter

1 be, yes.

2 Q And part of the northern
3 fluted moraine that you have on your figure 1 is in
4 this permafrost area.

5 A That's right.

6 Q Now, as you stated, your
7 east of the Franklin route or corridor goes only as far
8 north as Sitidgi Lake.

9 A Yes.

10 Q And I suppose just as
11 Mr. Rutter took us to a point on the east side of the
12 Franklins, you take us further to the north, but you
13 can't tell us where you intend to go north of that.

14 A Well, not precisely. Of
15 course they have to be connected to the producing
16 areas so there would have to be additional water
17 crossings.

18 Q I take it that to be
19 consistent with your philosophy of looking at overall
20 development in an area, one couldn't just bring a
21 corridor part-way, you'd have to look at where it
22 ended up going.

23 A That's right, and the
24 whole question of delta distribution/^{the}gathering system
25 would have to be considered from the standpoint of
26 terrain, all the elements that we're talking about
27 in this evidence.

28 Q But you haven't done that
29 as yet.

30 A No, we haven't.

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Carter

1 Q On page 9 dealing with the
2 fluted moraine, about half-way down the paragraph at
3 the top of the page you say:

4 "The material forming the ridges is believed
5 to be a fairly uniform stony till."

6 A Yes.

7 Q I take it from that --

8 THE COMMISSIONER: Page 9?

9
10 MR. CARTER: Yes sir, about
11 six or seven lines down.

12 Q Do you have any informa-
13 tion as to whether or not there might be a fairly
14 large content within these flutes of large boulders?

15 A Yes, I think that this
16 evidence has been produced by Dr. Rutter, who was
17 describing the --

18 Q Have you --

19 A -- similar but not identi-
20 cal flute features to the west, and this is a -- one of
21 the features of the flutes that they at times have
22 large boulders at the crests.

1 Q Could you give us an
2 estimate, Dr. Roed, of how much of the route is on
3 the flutings and how much is in areas where you
4 wouldn't be able to stick to the flutings?

5 A Okay. May I just refer
6 to a map and sort of just give a general idea?

7 Q Sure.

8 A Well, just as a general
9 estimate, I would say somewhere between -- well,
10 perhaps as high as 60% of the route between Fort
11 Providence and Sitidgi Lake would be on the flutes.

12 Q Then north of Sitidgi
13 Lake ---

14 THE COMMISSIONER: Between.
15 Fort --

16 A Between Fort
17 Providence.

18 THE COMMISSIONER: That is
19 East of the Franklins.

20 A Yes, along the East of
21 the Franklins corridor.

22 THE COMMISSIONER: Right, right
23 right.

24 MR. CARTER: And then north
25 of Sitidgi Lake we don't know what the route might
26 be, but whatever it was, it would not be in the fluted
27 moraine, I take it.

28 A That is right. It
29 would be in more of the delta, you know, the Mackenzie
30 Delta type terrain.

1 Q Now, there are two
2 general areas shown on figure one of fluted moraine,
3 the northern one and the southern one. Is it fair
4 to say in the southern sections the flutes are
5 not as well defined and that you may have more problem
6 there with swampy lowland?

7 A No, on the contrary,
8 in the southern section they are even better defined
9 than in the northern section.

10 Q So the northern section
11 would be the more difficult?

12 A They are just not as
13 well developed. I don't know whether it would be
14 more difficult or not or whether that would -- it is
15 more difficult because you are in the permanent
16 permafrost zone, so inherently there are going to
17 be more problems with regard to ice content.

18 Q So the percentage of
19 lowland is possibly the same in both the north and
20 the south?

21 A There is very small
22 percentage of lowlands along the entire route,
23 very small.

24 Q Now, also on page 9
25 you have set out the terrain advantages of the fluted
26 moraine and the first one is river crossings. I wonder,
27 sir, if the advantage of the river crossings is
28 really that related to the fluted moraine or whether
29 it is not simply the fact that the river crossings
30 on the east of the Franklins Route are, because of I

M.A. Roed
Cross Exam by Carter

1 suppose, the fact that they are not between the
2 Franklins and the Mackenzie River where the rivers
3 have deeper valleys. Their river banks may not
4 be as steep. I am just wondering if --

5 THE COMMISSIONER: Well,
6 they are closer to where they rise, isn't that the
7 point?

8 A Well, I think the point
9 is I have probably included an overall advantage of
10 the East of the Franklins Route under the heading
11 of advantages of fluted moraine and your point
12 is well taken. But the combination of the two is --

13 THE COMMISSIONER: But I have
14 got the point, haven't I? I mean, if you are close
15 to where the river rises, you have got less water and
16 presumably a smaller riverbed to contend with.

17 A That is correct.
18 It is a happy coincidence, the combination.

19 THE COMMISSIONER: And it
20 has nothing to do with the fluted moraine?

21 A Not per se, no.

22 MR. CARTER: Now, in your
23 section on river crossings, you state that there are
24 only two minor crossings, namely the Kugaluk River
25 and the Hare Indian River, I believe that is headwaters,
26 and I am advised that a number of other rivers are
27 just as large as these two and I am referring to the
28 Iroquois, the Minor, the Wolverine, the Willowlake,
29 and the Horn and I am wondering whether or not you
30 agree with that.

1 A Well, compared to, you
2 know, the sort of general catagory of minor river
3 crossings in the Mackenzie Valley, I certainly don't.
4 There is a considerable difference between the characteris-
5 tics of the so-called minor river crossings along the
6 Mackenzie Valley route and the minor ones along the
7 East of the Franklins.

8
9 Q What about as compared to
10 the two you listed, the Kugluk and the Hare Indian?

11 A Well, you know, I haven't
12 really looked at it in that much detail and perhaps I
13 should include maybe one or more of these minor streams
14 in that general catagory, but on the level of analysis
15 that we are presently at, I think it is a fair
16 statement.

17 Q Now, I believe in your
18 evidence that you stated that the East of the Franklins
19 Route was practically the same length as the Arctic
20 Gas Route, and I am advised that from the Delta to
21 Rainbow Lake the difference would be at least 60
22 miles and that the East of the Franklins would be
23 60 miles longer. Would you disagree with that?

24 A No, I don't think that I
25 disagree with that. That isn't really much of a
26 difference. It may in fact be 60 miles shorter if
27 you take in all the twists and turns along each of
28 the routes, but on the basis of the map, they are general
29 about the same length.

30 Q So, it is a question of

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Carter

1 how significant you regard the difference in length?
2 In other words if it was 60 miles you wouldn't
3 consider that to be all that significant?

4 A Well, I am not saying
5 that it is 60 miles further and, you know, I am
6 even suggesting that too, at least at the Northwest
7 Territories boundary, if you want to go over to
8 Rainbow, well, that is really --I would agree, if
9 you want to go to Rainbow and follow both routes
10 along, and measure them to Rainbow, it would probably
11 be a bit longer. To the Territories border it is about
12 equal and depending on the detail of measurement
13 along each of the, say, preliminary final design
14 routes, East of the Franklins might even be shorter.

15 Q If I could now turn to
16 your mile by mile discussion of the East of the
17 Franklins --

18 THE COMMISSIONER: If you
19 are turning to another subject, would this be a
20 good point at which to adjourn?

21 MR. CARTER: It would, sir.

22 THE COMMISSIONER: All right,
23 we will adjourn to --

24 MR. GOUDGE: 2 o'clock, sir?

25 THE COMMISSIONER: 2 o'clock.

26 Oh, I was discussing our schedule in November yesterday
27 and you will remember that I said that the week of
28 November 10th presented difficulty because the first
29 day, the 10th, Monday, is all right, but the second
30 day, Tuesday the 11th is Remembrance Day and so I said

M. J. 1001
Cross-examined

1 we would not sit on Monday the

2 I think what we ought to do
3 8th which would give us a start
4 November the third, then we will
5 off, Monday the 10th, Tuesday the
6 will recommence on Wednesday the
7 Unless there is some violent
8 think that is what we will do
9 really lose any time. I am
10 for that suggestion.

11 M.P.

12 that when it comes to that S.
13
14 will adjourn until two, then.

15 (PROCEEDINGS ADJOURNED)

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Carter

(PROCEEDINGS RESUMED PURSUANT TO ADJOURNMENT)

THE COMMISSIONER: Ready to go, Mr. Carter? You just carry on, if you will.

MR. CARTER: Very good, sir.

Q When we adjourned, Dr. Roed, I was about to get into a consideration of the east of Franklins route, referring to the Mile by Mile description that you've given in the bound report. Now, in the first section, Mile 0 to Mile 175, you point out that two of the features are, firstly that the area is well-drained and also that the terrain is lower in relief. I'm wondering about those two characteristics and whether or not it's true, it's not true in areas of continuous permafrost and particular as we're dealing with here. Terrain with low relief is generally poorly drained relative to areas of high relief.

A Yes, the answer to that question is "yes". But you know, we're talking about a comparative thing. I made the comment that it was generally of lower relief in comparison to the more rugged aspect of the terrain in the similar section of the Mackenzie Valley route. It was simply a comparison that along the Mackenzie Valley route, in that particular portion of the area we're looking at, the east of Franklins route crosses over less rugged terrain. Perhaps that's what I should have said.

Q Because as you say, if you get into low relief you could have more problems

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Carter

1 with drainage, particularly in permafrost areas.

2 A Well, low relief doesn't
3 necessarily indicate poor drainage conditions. Low
4 relief refers to the difference between the low areas
5 and the high areas, and if it's only 100 feet, that
6 is considered to be low, whereas say in the Rocky
7 Mountains where you have a relief of 7,000 feet, that
8 is high relief. I think you're confusing -- well,
9 perhaps --

10 Q I think you would
11 understand the difference if I could refer you to the
12 next section, Mile 175 to Mile 300. Again you refer
13 to the feature of low relief. Is that not correct?

14 A That's right, but I
15 don't necessarily refer to it as a depressional basinal
16 areas along the route. It is simply a relative descrip-
17 tion more or less in comparison to the Mackenzie Valley
18 route. Too mountainous an area, if you want to
19 take the extremes. In other words, there's a gently
20 rolling terrain with very few high hills to climb
21 and this kind of thing.

22 Q Well, I understand that.
23 In that section you refer to the route passing over
24 the saddle of the Colville Hills.

25 A Yes.

26 Q And then in the next
27 sentence refer to low relief, and I'm wondering if
28 it is not fair to say that there is a considerable
29 -- or the relief is fairly high, particularly in
30 crossing the saddle of the Colville Hills?

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Carter

1 A Well, I wouldn't consider
2 that a very high area.

3 Q I'm advised that it's
4 in the order of four to 500 feet, is that about the
5 range that you'd expect?

6 A Over that 50-mile
7 stretch, you know from one end to the other there could
8 be a difference of four to 500 feet, I'm not exactly
9 sure.

10 Q Well, as I understand your
11 description of "relief", it's not so much looking at
12 it over long-range, but the difference is in --

13 A That's right.

14 Q So that was what I was
15 referring to, and I'm advised it's in the order of
16 four to 500 feet, in the silty area of the Colville Hills,
17 the saddle of the Colville Hills.

18 A Well, that's not my
19 information.

20 Q You disagree with that?

21 A I would disagree with
22 that.

23 Q Now, you've told us
24 about the fluted moraine, and that it's the big advant-
25 age of the east of the Franklins route. Could you
26 tell us how many miles you'd have to cross fluted
27 moraine at right angles?

28 A I think I've indicated
29 that there is an area between the southern fluted
30 moraine and the northern fluted moraine where the

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Carter

1 trend of the topography is at right angles.

2 Q That would be the section
3 on your figure 1 between the two circled areas.

4 A That's correct. Now in
5 all that entire area I would estimate that perhaps
6 in direct,
half of it would be directly perpendicular to some of
7 the topographic forms. The other half you can align it
8 along topographic forms locally.
9

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Carter

Q We move next then, Dr.

Roed, to the assessment between Mile 300 and Mile 600, and this is found on page 16 of the bound report. At the top of that page you refer to glaciolacustrine. I hope I pronounced that right, sand deposits which will allow selection of a well drained route. I am wondering what you base that view on that these deposits are well-drained?

A This is one of the areas that I looked at in a little more detail on air photographs of the area, and the features that I am referring to here are a combination of the abandoned strand lines, these old beach lines, and the silty moraine that are preserved north of the Horn Plateau, there are grooves that form low ridges, and I should say there are flutes that form low ridges and also there are ridges of deep sand. These are indicated to be very well drained because of the vegetation on them and the general terrain characteristics in the area.

Q The next section is Mile 600 to Mile 700, and -- oh, I'm sorry, before I go on-- still in the Mile 600 to Mile 400, you mentioned the pressure of karst features. Did the route as you foresee it cross any of these features?

A The corridor zone that we are representing here could cross some of these features. They are not known in any detail. I don't suppose that they offer any problem with regard to pipeline in any event, but they may offer problems for other construction purposes.

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Carter

1 Q Now, moving onto the next
2 section, Mile 600 to Mile 700, and specifically I refer
3 to the ground between the Horn Plateau and the Mackenzie
4 River. Would it be fair to say that this area is
5 relatively poorly drained?

6 A From the indications that
7 I have, the region is not aswell-drained as the rest
8 of the route.

9 Q And could you expect to
10 find frozen and unfrozen ground in this area?

11 A I would expect that there
12 would be a -- there could be isolated areas of permafrost
13 yes.

14 Q And these could cause some
15 problems in construction?

16 A I would expect so.

17 Q Now, again you say that
18 there are these strand lines in this area. Does the
19 corridor run parallel or perpendicular to these strand
20 lines?

21 A Well, what exactly are
22 you referring to, what section? Could you refer me
23 exactly to the paragraph -- the page?

24 Q Again, on page 16, the
25 second sentence is:

26 "Careful selection to ensure a good route, es-
27 pecially if strand lines can be followed."

28 A O.K., I'm with you now.
29 I'm sorry. Yes, these strand lines are -- they curl
30 right around one plateau -- that is the Horn Plateau.

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Carter

1 A Yes.

2 Q Now for the east of Fran-
3 klin route, you propose these staging areas and then I
4 take it that there will be winter roads in these areas?

5 A That's right.

6 Q Would these be required to
7 be in areas where there were no existing winter roads?

8 A At the moment.

9 Q Yes.

10 A Yes.

11 Q Now, have you taken costs
12 into account of your assessment of routes and corridors?

13 A We have done a very gen-
14 eral analysis with respect to the increased distance
15 of transport that would be required along winter roads.
16 That is trucking. We have not costed the trucking but
17 we have determined the general magnitude of increased
18 trucking costs which is the primary consideration with
19 regard to increased logistics.

20 Q Now, if I could refer
21 you, sir, to your chart with the dots on it.

22 THE COMMISSIONER: The exhibit?

23 MR. ANTHONY: Table 1

24 MR. CARTER: Yes, Table 1.

25 MR. ANTHONY: I believe the two
26 figures and the tables were provided separately, but --

27 THE COMMISSIONER: Figure 2
28 or figure 1?

29 MR. ANTHONY: Table 1.

30 THE COMMISSIONER: Right, right.

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Carter

1 MR. CARTER: Q The dots or
2 the black marks depending upon how good your route is,
3 your first category in this rating is sensitive terrain,
4 and bearing in mind some of the considerations that I
5 asked you about in the mile by mile routing, I wonder
6 if you still agree with the small dots that you have
7 given to the east of the Franklins and the edge of the
8 Shield route, or whether they might not be given a
9 moderately sized dot?

10 A No, I am sticking with
11 this presentation as it is, and I would like to add that
12 this graphic portrayal is an attempt to simplify the
13 general conclusions as a result of this work.

14 Q Moving onto your section,
15 "Construction problems". I ask a similar question and
16 do so, because under the east of Franklins you've given
17 it the small dots and as you stated, you will require
18 these winter roads over to the Franklins route, and I
19 was wondering if in view of that, do you still consider
20 construction is not much of a problem on that route?

21 A I still do, and the reason
22 being that these construction problems are probably
23 related to terrain sensitivity. The terrain sensitivity
24 is much higher in the Mackenzie River Valley than
25 either of the two routes which is a fundamental part
26 of my evidence. Therefore, construction problems,
27 comparatively speaking, do not change.

28 Q Well sir, you've got a
29 category on the top with "terrain sensitivities" and then
30 you've got another category for construction problems,

M.A. Roed
CrossExam by Carter

1 and I take it that you are talking about something
2 different than just terrain sensitivity.

3 A Construction problems
4 in relation to sensitive terrain. You will note that
5 the east of the Franklins and edge of the Shield route
6 both have very little sensitive terrain in them, in
7 comparison to the Mackenzie River Valley. Therefore we
8 would expect that the construction problems would be
9 in relative scale to that.

10 Q But you acknowledge that
11 you could encounter ice content in the terrain east of
12 the Franklins?

13 A Yes, I acknowledge that,
14 but I want to stress as my opinion that you will not
15 encounter the amount of ice and the included problems
16 along the east of the Franklins route in the scale that
17 that is well-documented along the Mackenzie River Valley.

18 Q Now, still dealing with
19 your category of construction problems, your edge of
20 the Shield route is given in small dots as well. I
21 note you have a separate category for major water
22 crossings and I take it from that in assessing construc-
23 tion problems on the edge of the Shield route you haven't
24 included in that assessment the construction problems
25 in crossing the large bodies of water.

26 A That's right.
27
28
29
30

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Carter

1
2 Q And in the next category
3 construction materials, the edge of the Shield is
4 given a small dot. I am advised that particularly
5 along the northern part of that route and again probably
6 around the major lakes there could be a scarcity of
7 good construction materials. Would you agree with that?

8 A What kind of construction
9 materials?

10 Q I believe I'm talking about
11 sand and gravel.

12 A There is a possibility.
13 However, looking at the entire route, over the entire
14 route, it's certainly clear to me that there are many
15 more sand and gravel deposits along the entire route
16 as compared to the Mackenzie Valley, and I think it
17 is a possibility that you will find isolated localities
18 where sand and gravel will be a problem; but they are
19 comparatively few.

20 I might add that we did not
21 consider bedrock as a potential aggregate source, and
22 along all routes there is a fair representation of
23 bedrock, if that kind of material has to be used.

24 Q On page 11 of your
25 prepared evidence, you refer to the report of the
26 Pipeline Assessment Group and the fact that they have
27 a number of criticisms of the Arctic Gas route and
28 I'm wondering if that's not mostly a function of the
29 time spent evaluating it, whether or not it's quite
30 likely that if either the routes proposed by yourself

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Carter

1 were subjected to the same scrutiny, that they might
2 just come up with as many points of concern.

3 A I think the whole point
4 of referring to that report supports the idea of looking
5 at alternative routes. We have with the knowledge of
6 the sort of fundamentals that have been outlined by
7 the Northern Pipeline Group have been able to locate
8 a route that in many cases circumvents any concern
9 that, as they relate it in this report.

10 Q There may, however,
11 be problems perhaps as yet unforeseen though, in these
12 routes proposed by yourself.

13 A Yes, there could be.

14 But certainly they
15 wouldn't be of the magnitude from the standpoint of
16 the terrain, as is already documented on the Mackenzie
17 River Valley.

18 MR. CARTER: I have no further
19 questions, thank you.

20
21 ME. GOUDGE:

22 Mr. Commissioner, I might
23 begin with Dr. Roed by asking, not having been here
24 yesterday, so I'll be certain, whether or not the
25 five exhibits attached to this report are to be treated
26 as evidence? I understood from this morning's exchange
27 and a brief look at the transcript that they are not.

28 MR. ANTHONY: I believe, Mr.
29 Commissioner, the appendices are part of the report
30 and evidence before you. What is not part of the

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Goudge

1 evidence before you is environmental overview appendix
2 "E".

3 MR. GOUDGE: The other four
4 appendices are then?

5 MR. ANTHONY: The other four
6 may be referred to and were prepared by Dr. Roed or
7 under his supervision, as a background in support of
8 some of his conclusions in the evidence he's presented
9 in his statement.

10 MR. GOUDGE: Thank you.

11
12 CROSS-EXAMINATION BY MR. GOUDGE:

13 Q Dr. Roed, you begin your
14 prepared testimony with a brief recitation of what I
15 would call the principle of corridor development where
16 you say that on page 1 of your prepared evidence:

17 "That a major and far-reaching implication
18 of any potential transportation route is that
19 once a single facility is established for
20 whatever reason, it is difficult if not
21 impossible to curtail additional facilities
22 along the same general route."

23 You are familiar, I take it, with the pipeline guide-
24 lines?

25 A Generally.

26 Q Yes, and I take it you'd
27 agree with me that they assert that as a kind of
28 principle as well; is that so?

29 A Yes.
30

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Goudge

1 Q And in fact insofar as
2 pipeline development is concerned, they dictate it
3 as a kind of consequence, is that so as well?

4 A I'm not sure. I'm really
5 not familiar in that much detail with that document
6 you referred to.

7 Q And you gave in answer
8 to Mr. Carter this morning one or two examples of
9 where imperically it's been so that a second, third,
10 and so on facility has followed the route of the
11 first. Did I understand you correctly in that?

12 A Yes.

13 Q Do you know of any cases
14 where there has been strong objection to further
15 facilities following the route of an initial facility,
16 and yet further facilities have followed that first
17 facility?

18 A Precisely I don't. Not,
19 you know, except for the example that I've related
20 with the Banff National Park.

21 Q Was there opposition in
22 that case to the subsequent facilities following the
23 route of the original facility?

24 A Well, there's certainly
25 opposition to the twinning of the TransCanada Highway
26 right now, and I'm not sure whether that has advanced
27 to the stage of actually proceeding, regardless of the
28 opposition or not.

29 Q Would you agree with
30 me that the principle of corridor development is perhaps

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Goudge

1 a tendency rather than any kind of imperative.

2 A Well, I'm not sure what
3 kind of corridor development you re talking about, but
4 the kind of corridor development that I am talking
5 about is one that is based upon long-range planning
6 a complete inventory of physical biologic resources
7 and a thorough treatment of socio-economic and environ-
8 mental factors, and at that stage perhaps we would be
9 able to choose the best corridor. That is the kind of
10 corridor development I am talking about. If that meets
11 your definition, then I would agree with you.

12 Q The principle of corridor
13 development I refer to, though, is the tendency of
14 further facilities to follow the route of the first
15 facility. You'd agree with me that that tendency
16 exists?

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Goudge

1 A Yes.

2 Q Would you agree with me that
3 it is not an imperative, it is simply something that
4 emperically has appeared to be the case?

5 A Yes.

6 Q There's nothing inherent
7 in nature that requires further facilities to follow
8 the routes of the first facility.

9 A Not necessarily.

10 Q It is proven to be the
11 case in many instances. Would you agree with that?

12 A Would you repeat the
13 question again. Certainly be the case that ---

14 Q Further facilities have
15 tended to follow the route of the first facility in
16 an area?

17 A Yes.

18 Q I am interested in
19 pursuing a point raised by Mr. Carter this morning.
20 Would you agree that the Mackenzie River itself
21 is a transportation facility?

22 A Yes.

23 Q And that there is a
24 telecommunications facility along the Mackenzie
25 now?

1 If the corridor principle is sound, isn't it so
2 that the first route in this area has already been
3 chosen?

4 A By who?

5 THE COMMISSIONER: By nature.

6 A From the standpoint of
7 development, I certainly acknowledge the obvious
8 use that the Mackenzie River offers. That is something
9 that we didn't plan. It was there to begin with. Now,
10 what we have been, if you like, chosen to decide is
11 whether we want to maintain that area as a major corridor.
12 The evidence that I am presenting to you suggests that
13 it should not be maintained as a major transportation
14 corridor, that from the standpoint of terrain sensitivity
15 and other resources that may occur in the north, that
16 it is not an appropriate place to maintain or build
17 up a corridor. We do not necessarily have to
18 follow nature. We have the facilities to, not necessarily
19 follow nature in this particular case.

20 Q Dr. Roed,
21 you ask us to prefer either of your two easterly
22 routes because they are preferential not just for the
23 first facility, the gas line, but for subsequent facilit-
24 ies.

25 A That is right, yes.

26 Q I am suggesting to you
27 that the first facility has been built or has been in
28 existence along the Mackenzie Valley and if your
29 corridor development principle is correct, it will, to
30 quote you, be difficult if not impossible to curtail

1 additional facilities along that general route.

2 A What facility are you
3 talking about again?

4 Q I am talking about sub-
5 sequent transportation facilities following the initial
6 facility, which I have put to you, in the Mackenzie
7 Valley is the river itself.

8 A But that is not man-
9 induced.

10 Q But you agree with
11 me that it is a transportation facility.

12 A Certainly, but it is not
13 man-induced.

14 Q Isn't it though in some
15 sense misleading to make a comparison between the
16 three corridors that you pose as if there were no
17 initial facilities in any of the three when there is
18 in fact an initial facility in one of the three.

19 A No, I don't agree. I
20 feel that the basis of my comparison, that terrain
21 sensitivity fundamentally, and the other features that
22 we pointed out is a solid base on which to decide
23 on where to put the next route.

24 Q But it is not a fair
25 comparison, is it to assume that there are no facilities
26 extant in any of the three routes.

27 A There certainly is no
28 comparable natural facility that has been naturally
29 used by activity up and down the Mackenzie Valley,
30 that is right.

1 Q In only one of those
2 three corridors, the Mackenzie Valley, does that
3 occur, isn't that so?

4 A No, that is not so.
5 We have another general area of transport that has
6 been used quite extensively in recent years, and I am
7 referring to the Great Bear River, for one, and
8 secondly I am referring to what has been referred
9 to as Denison's Ice Road, which is a series of
10 lakes that connect Great Bear River -- or Great Bear
11 Lake with Yellowknife.

12 Q Is Denison's Ice Road
13 along or approximately along either of your two
14 easterly corridors?

15 A It is approximately
16 along the Edge of the Shield Route.

17 Q I see.

18 THE COMMISSIONER: What was
19 the other thing you said besides Denison's Ice
20 Road?

21 A The Great Bear River
22 and
23 barge/road system, taking supplies in and out of
24 Fort Franklin, Great Bear Lake and Echo Bay Silver
25 Mines.

26 MR. GOUDGE: That is a right
27 angle, though, sir, to the three proposed corridor
28 routes, is it not?

29 A Pardon me?

30 Q That facility does not
run along any of your three corridors, it runs at

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Goudge

1 right angles to all of them.

2 A That is right.

3 THE COMMISSIONER: What is the
4 silver mine at Echo Bay? Is that Terra?

5 A No, it is Echo Bay
6 Mines, and there is also Terra Mine, also,
7 there are two mines there.

8 THE COMMISSIONER: At Echo
9 Bay?

10 A Yes, well, they are
11 very close together.

12 THE COMMISSIONER: And now
13 they take the ore out by barge, do they, or how do
14 they get it out?

15 A I think they fly some of
16 it out, some highgrade material out, but the copper
17 rich concentrates are stockpiled and are taken out
18 by barge.

19 THE COMMISSIONER: In the
20 summer.

21 A That is right.

22 THE COMMISSIONER: Do they
23 take them north or south?

24 A They take them south
25 and put them on the railroad.

26 THE COMMISSIONER: Onto the
27 railway.

28 A Onto the railway, yes.
29 Well, I think they do truck some out also.

30

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Goudge

1 MR. GOUDGE: Do they take them
2 out along the Mackenzie Corridor, sir?

3 A Yes, -- well, partly,
4 yes.

5 Q Now, Dr. Roed, turning
6 if I may then to the kind of general planning techniques
7 you have used in approaching this comparison,
8 you give us a list, at the top of page three of your
9 prepared evidence, certain factors that you use in
10 your initial comparison. Are those factors an inclusive
11 list of the factors you used to compare or were there
12 others?

13 A These are the -- the
14 have
15 list that I/suggested should be used and generally
16 speaking I would say that we have tried to relate
17 to this list, yes.

18 Q You say in column two
19 under terrain that aesthetic potential is a factor
20 to be used to compare. What do you mean by that?

21 A Well, I mean by that,
22 the concern through my experience that landscape
23 architects have in the planning, environmental planning
24 of route selection, and what they like to see from
25 my experience with them is something that blends with
26 the terrain and vegetation patterns rather than some-
27 thing that is in contrast to them and that is basically
28 what we are talking about.
29
30

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Goudge

1 We start in the beginning with
2 the highest aesthetic potential.

3 Q Which I take it is
4 land, minus development without development.

5 A Well, that's right, but
6 if you're talking about a linear pipeline and you're
7 talking about a linear fluted moraine, it's just a,
8 you know, somewhat highly compatible combination and
9 it would be fundamentally aesthetic.

10 Q If aesthetic potential
11 then is at its highest, land without development,
12 using that factor of comparison only, would you agree
13 that your two easterly corridors rank ahead of the
14 Mackenzie corridor?

15 A Yes.

16 Q There is a wilderness
17 factor attaching at present to the two easterly routes
18 which one cannot attach to the Mackenzie route.

19 A We have not considered
20 that aspect.

21 Q Well, surely it's built
22 into your aesthetic potential factor.

23 A No, that is not what I
24 mean. By "aesthetic potential" I do not refer to
25 wilderness classification.

26 Q I see, so you haven't
27 used a wilderness factor in comparing these three
28 routes?

29 A No, I have not.
30

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Goudge

1 Q But you would agree with
2 me that if you did, the two easterly routes would
3 rank below the Mackenzie Valley in terms of what one
4 would develop.

5 A They could.

6 Q Well, they would, wouldn't
7 they? They're not developed corridors, the Mackenzie
8 corridor has some development in it.

9 A Well, the corridor, in
10 general yes, but it just depends on where you place
11 the pipeline finally in the Mackenzie Valley. It could
12 have really no relation to existing development
13 along there. I mean it might be, if you're talking
14 about the river, the pipeline is quite a ways from
15 the river in places.

16 Q Well, I'm talking about
17 the Mackenzie corridor as compared to the east of the
18 Franklin corridor as compared to the edge of the Shield
19 corridor, and I suggest to you that if you rank those
20 three in terms of wilderness potential, one must rank
21 the Mackenzie corridor below the other two, and therefore
22 more easily developed on that criteria.

23 A I would have to, you know,
24 agree with that in general.

25 Q Yes. You say in your
26 prepared evidence that ^a comparison at the early planning
27 stage yields the three corridors you've spoken to us
28 about. Do you have any comment on the Fairbanks corri-
29 dor, using these criteria?

30 A Well, actually, you know,

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Goudge

1 I don't have a comment on the Fairbanks corridor.
2 My study was restricted to the Mackenzie Valley area.

3 Q Then on page 11 of your
4 prepared evidence, you say at the first full paragraph:

5 "While further analysis and research is required
6 to resolve potential problems of logistics and
7 it is supply suggested that the disadvantages would
8 be outweighed by the other advantages of these
9 alternative corridors."

10 I'm interested, sir, that that paragraph suggests
11 some kind of trade-off process that you went through
12 using the factors I have just referred to. Do I
13 read that paragraph correctly?

14 A Taking all those factors
15 into consideration?

16 Q Yes.

17 A Yes.

18 Q Could you give us some
19 assistance as to how you went about the trade-off
20 process? Was it intuitive? Did you quantify?

21 A Well, if I can just re-
22 late to you, going back to this diagram in Table 1,
23 you know, that's basically, it's the synthesis of that
24 table.

25 Q Well, let me put it to
26 you this way: How did you decide to put a big black
27 ball under the Mackenzie Valley column for sensitive
28 terrain, and small black balls beside the other two?

29 A Well, very simple because
30 the Mackenzie Valley contains more sensitive terrain

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Goudge

1 than the other two routes.

2 Q So you really have
3 three categories.

4 A Yes.

5 Q Good, moderate, and bad,
6 or whatever.

7 A More or less, yes.

8 This is just strictly a
9 general comparison.

10 Q And then I take it what
11 you do in order to give the prize to the two easterly
12 corridors is to count up the number of big black
13 balls and give the prize to the fewest number.

14 A You could do that, yes.

15 Q Was that the way you did
16 it?

17 A I hadn't counted them
18 up and given them a weight. But perhaps I should,
19 sometime.

20 Q Was there any other
21 process you went through to determine that the two
22 easterly corridors are preferable?

23 A No, there wasn't, not
24 from a --

25 Q I take it that from
26 terms of these factors appearing on Table 1 you gave
27 each of them equal weight.

28 A Yes.

29 Q Now sir, coming to the
30 two corridors that you spoke about in most detail for

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Goudge

1 us, dealing first with the edge of the Shield route,
2 are you familiar with Dr. Rampton's report for the
3 Environmental Social Program called "Terrain Evaluation,
4 Mackenzie Transportation Corridor, Northern Part"?

5 A Yes.

6 MR. GOUDGE: Mr. Commissioner,
7 it would be useful, I think, for all of us if this
8 were filed as an exhibit. Dr. Rampton isn't a witness
9 but I think that is not pertinent. It's a report
10 that is here and is available to all.

11 THE COMMISSIONER: Well it
12 will be marked as an exhibit.

13 (REPORT OF DR. RAMPTON "TERRAIN EVALUATION,
14 MACKENZIE TRANSPORTATION CORRIDOR," MARKED
15 EXHIBIT 300)

16 MR. GOUDGE: Q In those
17 three areas dealing with the edge of the Shield route,
18 Dr. Roed, I wasn't sure from your answers this morning
19 whether you have any opinion on how the water crossings
20 on that route would likely be made by ship laying from
21 barge, laying off the ice, do you have any opinion as to
22 that?

23 A Generally I am not a
24 marine engineer nor am I a pipeline engineer, and -- but
25 it would seem to me that the simplest way to lay that
26 pipe would be to lay it off the ice.

27 Q I see. You simply say,
28 I take it, because under-water pipe has in the past
29 been laid by each of those three methods, that it
30 could be laid in this case.

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Goudge

1 A Well, the idea is taken
2 from Polar Gas research group right now, and I'm not
3 aware of whether the pipe has actually been -- this
4 has actually been done. I understand from Polar Gas
5 Reports that this is the way they intend to go about it.

6 Q You'd anticipate that
7 they would have concern about ice thickness supporting
8 their pipe-laying machinery?

9 A Yes.

10 Q And presumably you would
11 have some concerns about ice thickness on these two
12 major lakes for the same purpose.

13 A I would think so, yes.

14 Q I take it, though, you
15 have no doubt that the ice thickness would be suffi-
16 cient to support pipe-laying machinery?

17 A Not at this stage, but
18 it would be a factor that would have to be --

19 Q It's a possibility.

20 A Yes,

21 Q Now, dealing with the
22 logistical difficulties that your easterly route, even
23 the east of the Franklin route raises, you suggest
24 initially three supply points, as I understood you.

25 A Basically, yes.

26 Q Three major staging points.
27 I take it from a mathematical calculation that that
28 would mean each major staging point would supply up
29 to roughly 400 miles of the length of the route.

30 A Well, --

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Goudge

1 Q The one in the middle
2 supplying one --

3 A Yes.

4 Q -- 200-mile stretch, in
5 either direction for example.

6 A Yes, I don't think it's
7 400 miles. I think the route is less than --

8 Q If you say it's 800 miles
9 from top to bottom, then the middle point of supply
10 is 400 miles or 300 miles.

11 A O.K., 200 miles each
12 way, that's right, that's correct.

13 Q Now that means that
14 you're talking about three or four construction
15 spreads, if a spread deals with say 50 or 75 miles.

16 A Yes.

17 Q I suggest to you that
18 you'd need a large number of staging points, many more
19 than three to properly supply the line. Would you
20 agree with that?

21 A No, I don't think I would
22 agree with that.

23 Q That isn't your field
24 of expertise in any event though, is it?

25 A Well, I think it's a logi-
26 cal kind of appraisal, I think that it could be done,
27 I don't think you need particular expertise to comment
28 on something like that.

29 Q Would you agree that if
30 more supply points were necessary, that there would be

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Goudge

1 a concomitant increase in the number of access
2 roads required to the east of Franklin corridor?

3 A I do not foresee any
4 access roads except up the Rory Lake Valley.

5 Q Well, come with me so far
6 as to make an assumption that more than three supply
7 points are necessary on the Mackenzie, and assume
8 they are. Isn't it so that each supply point must have
9 a supply line into the east of Franklin corridor?

10 A They'll be located
11 pretty well right on the corridor. There will not
12 be any additional -- in fact in many cases there will
13 be less access road required along east of the Franklins
14 as there is presently proposed in the Mackenzie River
15 Valley. Now I'm not talking about the access road
16 along the route itself.

17 Q I'm not sure I understand
18 you, sir, and let me try to approach it this way.
19 You've named three staging areas. One near Fort
20 Providence, one on the Great Bear River, and one at
21 Inuvik.

22 A Yes.

23 Q If more supply points are
24 necessary, would they not be supply points with, per-
25 haps we've got a semantic problem, with locations on
26 the Mackenzie River from which equipment and machinery
27 could be transported to east of the Franklin corridor?

28 A If more are required,
29 yes, that's correct.

30 Q Yes, and if more are

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Goudge

1 required, the increase in numbers of access roads is
2 going to increase the environmental impact caused by
3 construction on east of the Franklin corridor.

4 A Yes.

5 Q Now, sir, you say one of
6 the advantages of your -- well, before I pass to that,
7 the same is true, is it not, of the edge of the
8 Shield route?

9 A Yes.

10 Q Now, one of the advantages
11 you speak of for the edge of the Shield route is that
12 it will provide a corridor accessible to mineral
13 material in the Shield, is that so?

14 A That is a possibility,
15 yes.

16 Q I take it it's so,
17 though, that the mineral material in the Shield is
18 in the main likely to be found a good deal east of
19 the edge of the Shield corridor, within the Shield
20 itself.

21 A Well, not necessarily.
22 I think there is lots of potential all around the
23 edge of the Shield in a 200-mile band, if you like.

24 Q But within the Shield
25 rather than along the edge.

26 A Oh yes, it's within the
27 Shield.

28 Q Yes.

29 A As far as base minerals
30 are concerned, yes.

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Goudge

1 Q So that any facility
2 designed to haul out that material would be some
3 distance at least to the east of a pipeline along
4 the edge of the Shield.

5 A That's correct, yes.

6 Q Now sir, you spoke about
7 another advantage of the edge of the Shield route,
8 namely, its location -- near its northern terminus,
9 if I can put it that way, related to the potential
10 gas deposits, and I would like a reiteration from you,
11 sir, of the report that you used to base that opinion
12 on. The opinion I'm speaking of is the location of
13 the potential gas-bearing body. You mentioned a report
14 this morning.

15 A Yes, and this is a report
16 that was done in-house by the Northern Assessment
17 Group by Mr. Jim Shear who evaluated generally, not
18 specifically for this evidence, that I had access to.

19 MR. GOUDGE: Sir, I wonder
20 if Mr. Anthony might give us that report?

21 MR. ANTHONY: Mr. Commissioner,
22 I checked on that and I understand that that is not
23 a completed report, but the aspects of it related to
24 the identification of the sedimentary basin had been
25 completed and was provided to Dr. Roed, and so there's
26 a portion of it has been provided. The report is being
27 completed and will be tabled as a report of this
28 Inquiry, for the Northern Assessment Group available
29 to this Inquiry.

30 THE COMMISSIONER: The reporter

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Goudge

1 advises me she has to change her tape, so maybe we
2 could stop for coffee now.

3 MR. GOUDGE: Yes sir.

4 THE COMMISSIONER: And come back
5 in a few minutes.

6 (PROCEEDINGS ADJOURNED FOR FEW MINUTES)
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

1 (PROCEEDINGS RESUMED PURSUANT TO ADJOURNMENT)

2 THE COMMISSIONER: I think
3 that Mr. Goudge has some further questions?

4 MR. GOUDGE: Yes. Just a
5 few more, if I may, Dr. Roed.

6 Q Turning really finally
7 to the East of the Franklins Route that you were
8 speaking about, you drew a contrast, as I understood
9 you there, between the terrain characteristics of that
10 corridor and the Mackenzie corridor, and let me see
11 if I understand the highlights of the difference
12 you drew. I take it you see a difference in the
13 amount of ice-rich glacial lake silts that there are
14 in each of the two routes?

15 A Yes,

16 Q And I take it that the
17 large number of deep valleys in the Mackenzie Route
18 give you some concern as well?

19 A Yes.

20 Q Is it fair to say that
21 those are the two major factors, at least in the
22 Mackenzie Route that cause you concern? -- the large
23 amount of ice-rich glacial lake silts and the relatively
24 large number of deep valleys?

25 A Yes.

26 Q Now, the East of the
27 Franklin Route on the other hand, I think, you say,
28 is a long belt of narrow ridges of till, basically.

29 A Yes.

30 Q And I think it is your

1 hope that the pipeline could be built on the tops
2 of those ridges?

3 A Yes.

4 Q And you feel that the
5 tops of those ridges would presumably prove relatively
6 less troublesome?

7 A That is right.

8 Q And would avoid a number
9 of stream crossings that occur in the Mackenzie
10 corridor?

11 A Yes.

12 Q Now, let me make a com-
13 parison for you between the Mackenzie and the East
14 of Franklin Routes and deal first with the Mackenzie
15 Route. Would you agree that insofar as we talk about
16 deep river valleys, the major area of concern runs
17 from, say, the Willowlake River in the south to the
18 Thunder River in the North?

19 A Yes.

20 Q And insofar as we worry
21 about ice-rich silts on the pipeline route in the
22 Mackenzie, the major area of concern at least runs
23 from River Between Two Mountains on the south to the
24 Gibson Pass on the north?

25 A Yes.

26 Q There may be one or two
27 other areas of concern, for example, the area between
28 Fort Good Hope and Thunder River further north and
29 the area in the vicinity of the Mackenzie River
30 Crossing upstream from Fort Simpson at the south.

1 A That is right.

2 Q The major area of ice-
3 rich silts is the area between River Between Two
4 Mountains and the Gibson Pass.

5 A Yes.

6 Q Now, let me switch
7 over to the East of the Franklin Route and ask you
8 whether or not the area of fluting, which you
9 spoke about, that provides the best pipeline building
10 route is not the area from, say, the northwest corner
11 of Great Bear Lake down through at least part of the
12 area you called the southern area of fluted moraine.

13 A Yes, I think so, yes,
14 if I understand the question.

15 Q Well, put it this way.
16 You say as I understand you, that the southern area
17 of fluted moraine on the East of the Franklin Route
18 is very good for pipeline construction.

19 A Yes.

20 Q And it is very good because
21 of these long flutes that you spoke of that may run
22 up to a hundred miles.

23 A Yes.

24 Q Now, where do you
25 place the southern limit of that very good pipeline
26 building land?

27 A Approximately at the
28 northern flank of the Horn Mountains, the Horn Plateau.

29 Q Is that what you attempt
30 to indicate by the southern boundary of the south

1 circle --

2 A Yes.

3 Q -- on exhibit one, or
4 table one, the attached figure one attached to your
5 evidence?

6 A Yes.

7 Q Let me suggest to
8 you that the southern limit of the very good land
9 may be rather further north than that and that there
10 are in fact some east-west flutings that cause concern
11 in the area, for example of the Willowlake River
12 depression.

13 A The southern portion of
14 that area is a little more difficult than the rest of it,
15 and so I looked at that in a little more detail and I
16 was convinced, myself, that a line could be chosen
17 through that slightly more difficult area that would
18 be entirely compatible with the characteristics of
19 the East of the Franklin Route.

20 Q You would go with me at
21 least this far, though, that the southern area of
22 your southern circle on figure one is more difficult
23 than the northern part of the southern circle on
24 figure one?

25 A It may not be, but it
26 could be.

27 Q Could I ask you to go to
28 the Glacial Map of Canada, if you would. I looked at
29 it at the break.

30 Now, sir, could you point out

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Goudge

1 roughly where the northern edge of the Willowlake
2 River depression is on your East of the Franklin
3 Corridor?

4 A Yes, I think it is this
5 area that you are referring to, right in here. Is
6 that correct? Do you want my magnifying glass?

7 Q Let me point out to you,
8 sir, what appears to me, at least, to be east-west
9 fluting on the East of Franklin Route that would run
10 approximately from the north edge of the Willowlake
11 River depression.

12 A They are shown distinctly
13 on the Glacial Map of Canada and I don't argue that,
14 but if you take a look at the ERTS photographs here,
15 you will see that there is a very short area here,
16 where the terrain does have the east-west trending
17 features.

18 The route that I envisage here,
19 it comes right around here and follows this fluted
20 moraine and strand-lines and this is the difficult
21 area that we would have to take a close look at
22 and to jump over to these flutes here. So there is a
23 very small area in that where it does go across some of
24 these east-west terrain features.

25 Q Let me suggest to you,
26 sir, that the southern limits of the good north-
27 south flutes ceases at about the north edge of the
28 Willow lake River depression as shown even on the
29 ERTS photograph, do you agree with that?

30 A No, I don't think that I

1 could agree with that because we have done some
2 work in here and I think with further detail that a
3 route that is either following strand-lines or these
4 subdued fluted moraine features can be chosen, but
5 I would agree that the features are more subdued in
6 that area.

7
8 Q Well, let me ask you to
9 focus, sir, on the part of your corridor south of the
10 Willowlake River depression, down, say, to Fort
11 Providence and ask you to compare that to the
12 corresponding portion of the Mackenzie Corridor and
13 ask you whether you agree with me that the superiority
14 of your route in that segment is less pronounced than
15 the superiority of your route in the segment immediately
16 north.
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Goudge

1 A At the level of the work
2 that we have done, I'm afraid I just can't comment on
3 that.

4 Q You aren't prepared to
5 agree or disagree?

6 A That's right.

7 Q You've no doubt though
8 that the superiority of your route in the area immed-
9 iately north of the Willowlake River depression is
10 substantial over the Mackenzie Valley corridor in the
11 same latitude.

12 A Yes.

13 Q Now let me take you to a
14 comparison of the two corridors further north, at the
15 north end. I took it from your answers this morning
16 particularly to Mr. Carter, that you agree with the
17 general proposition that as you go further north into
18 the continuous permafrost area your chances of getting
19 ice-rich soil, even in till, increase substantially.

20 A Yes.

21 Q I take it from that that
22 you would anticipate some ice problems, some ground
23 ice problems, even in your east of the Franklin route
24 at the north.

25 A Yes.

26 Q And would you agree then
27 that a comparison of the northern segments of the two
28 corridors does not yield a marked superiority to the
29 east of the Franklin corridor?

30 A Yes.

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Goudge

1 Q I come back then and ask
2 you to agree with me that the major area of superiority
3 of your east of the Franklin corridor to the Mackenzie
4 corridor is the southern area of fluted moraine.

5 A I would agree with that,
6 yes.

7 Q Dr. Roed, Dr. Rutter
8 yesterday enlightened us with his east of the Franklin
9 route. Would you agree that it takes in the area of
10 most advantageous superiority?

11 A No, it doesn't.

12 Q Because it's further
13 west?

14 A Because it's further
15 west and the flutes in that area are short and dis-
16 continuous in comparison to the flutes in the southern
17 belt that I've outlined here.

18 Q The flutes in both your
19 routes, both his and yours, in that area run north-
20 south, no doubt about that?

21 A Pardon?

22 Q The flutes in both routes
23 yours and his, in this middle part of the route, run
24 north-south.

25 A I believe so. I believe so.

26 Q Can I describe it this
27 way, that both you and Dr. Rutter, at least in the
28 middle Mackenzie section of your routes, are talking
29 about parallel zones of fluted moraine?

30 A Yes, they appear to be.

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Goudge

1 Q Would you advise that
2 there is any gain to be made by examining not simply
3 two distinct corridors as you propose, but a variety of
4 routes which may in every case take account of this
5 middle section east of the Franklins?

6 A Yes, I think that would
7 be advantageous except that on the level of work that
8 we have done, we feel that we have identified the most
9 suitable alternate routes.

10 Q There is no need, however,
11 to build along your entire corridor to take advantage
12 of the area in which you say there is the most marked
13 superiority?

14 A No, if you're talking
15 about some combinations, especially in the northern end
16 of the route, yes, I agree with that.

17 Q Or the southern end.

18 A It would depend on, you
19 know, an analysis. I would certainly have a wide open
20 mind in that respect.

21 Q Yes, your most strongly
22 held position is to depart from the proposed Mackenzie
23 Valley route in its mid-section so to speak.

24 A That is the most strongly
25 presented area from the standpoint of terrain sensitivity.

26 THE COMMISSIONER: From the
27 standpoint of what?

28 A Terrain sensitivity.

29 MR. GOUDGE: Q It's in the
30 area roughly from the north-west corner of Great Bear

M.A. Roed
Cross-Exam by Goudge

1 Lake to the Willowlake River depression that you see
2 the biggest superiority for the east of the Franklin
3 route.

4 A Major superiority, yes.

5 MR. GOUDGE: Thank you, sir.

6 Those are all the questions I have.

7 THE COMMISSIONER: All right.

8 Any re-examination, Mr. Anthony?

9 MR. ANTHONY: No re-examination,
10 Mr. Commissioner.

11 (WITNESS ASIDE)

12 MR. ANTHONY: I wonder if we
13 may have your indulgence and the indulgence of
14 others here for a few moments, if we propose to proceed
15 onto new matters, in that Dr. Rutter and Roed will be
16 able to catch the plane, I was wondering if they could
17 have just a moment so they could take the maps down
18 and file them away so that they can catch the 5:30
19 plane?

20 THE COMMISSIONER: Certainly.

21 It's not possible to leave the maps with us, I'm thinking
22 about that map on the far left, so is there a problem
23 here? If they've been marked as exhibits we don't mind
24 releasing them into the custody of Drs. Rutter and
25 Roed, but we should really make some arrangements to
26 get them back or to prepare copies for them, whatever
27 suits all of you.

28 MR. ANTHONY: Well, I'm not
29 sure whether these are being used presently or not.

30 MR. ROED: Well, there is

1 another set ERTS mosaics and you're certainly welcome
2 to have this set if it is in any way --

3 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, could
4 you leave the whole batch with us? I think one is ours
5 anyway.

6 MR. ROED: Yes, but I think
7 it's not this one. But you can have this one.

8 THE COMMISSIONER: Oh, I see.

9 MR. ROED: I have no objection
10 to that, at all.

11 MR. ANTHONY: If they aren't
12 being used they can all be left here, and if necessary
13 we can make arrangements --

14 THE COMMISSIONER: Why don't
15 you just leave them on the wall then for now and they
16 will be marked as exhibits?

17 MR. ANTHONY: FINE. That would
18 conclude their evidence then, sir.

19 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, thank
20 you very much, Dr. Roed. We certainly appreciate your
21 taking the trouble to acquaint us with the work you've
22 done in defining these two alternative, alternate routes
23 to the proposed gas pipeline. I should say for your
24 benefit and that of Dr. Rutter that while you know that
25 we did consider alternate routes at some length in
26 Whitehorse, last August, and we were considering the
27 evidence of Commissioner Parker and Dr. Weedon from
28 Alaska earlier this week. We are expecting counsel
29 for Foothills in due course, and other counsel to make
30 further representations based on what all of you

1 have told us about alternate routes and when counsel
2 have decided what they wish to say on this subject, we
3 will be in a position to -- at least I will be in a
4 position to consider the further course of the Inquiry
5 in relation to these alternate routes. I think it is
6 a question of giving some consideration to those
7 routes, if any, that the Inquiry should give further
8 consideration to at this stage. In any event, it has
9 been most useful and at the very least it provides us
10 with a backdrop against which to consider the proposed
11 Mackenzie Valley line, and more than that, it gives us
12 an opportunity to consider these alternate routes.
13 I say this for your benefit, Dr. Roed and Dr. Rutter's
14 benefit so that you will understand what our next
15 step is in considering these alternate routes.

16 So thank you very much, sir.

17 MR. ROED: Thank you very much.

18 MR. GOUDGE: Mr. Commissioner,
19 it will serve the continuity of the Inquiry perfectly
20 for those remarks to have been made, because Mr.
21 Hollingworth advised me at the break that he has some
22 remarks to address to you, sir, on this very question,
23 to put the Foothills position. Perhaps, since it can
24 be done quite shortly, he might do that now, with
25 your permission.

26 MR. HOLLINGWORTH: Thank you,
27 sir. This may or may not be a contentious issue, but
28 this is the statement of Foothills.

29 It is Foothills' opinion that
30 it has already complied with the requirements of the

1 Inquiry in respect to both alternate corridors and
2 alternate routes. Foothills takes this position on the
3 following grounds: In the expanded guidelines on
4 page 9, the government recites that it is prepared
5 to receive applications to construct within broad
6 corridors, one of which is along the Mackenzie Valley
7 region in a broad sense. The Foothills application
8 is for authority to construct within that broad corridor.

9 There does not seem to be
10 any other reference to corridors other than on page 9,
11 and so it is Foothills conclusion that there is no
12 requirement to put forward alternate corridors, using
13 the word "corridor" in the broad sense used in the
14 guidelines. There is reference on page 11, to "alternative
15 pipeline routes".

16 THE COMMISSIONER: Excuse me,
17 would you repeat that thought?

18 MR. HOLLINGWORTH: Yes sir, in
19 fact I can provide you with a copy of this statement.

20 THE COMMISSIONER: Oh, good.

21 MR. HOLLINGWORTH: It's not a
22 very good copy, but I think it will serve the purpose.

23 THE COMMISSIONER: All right.

24 A one-page document, that's a unique event in this
25 Inquiry. Where --

26 M R. HOLLINGWORTH: It was the
27 third paragraph which I just read, sir.

28 THE COMMISSIONER: Let me
29 just read that.

30 MR. HOLLINGWORTH: Yes.

1 THE COMMISSIONER: Yes, all
2 right, carry on.

3 MR. HOLLINGWORTH: Continuing
4 then there is a reference on page eleven to alterna-
5 tive pipeline routes. Foothills understands the
6 reference to mean alternative locations within a
7 chosen or designated corridor. With specific reference
8 to the Foothills application the obligation then
9 is to consider under (iii) other pipeline routes within
10 the Mackenzie Valley Region, the corridor defined on
11 page 9 of the expanded guidelines.

12 Other locations considered
13 by Foothills or its sponsor Alberta Gas Trunk Line
14 have been dealt with earlier in the Inquiry. Alberta
15 Gas Trunk Line was a member of the study group when
16 it considered a route west of the Mackenzie River and
17 then for the reasons given by Arctic Gas witnesses,
18 changed to the -- that should be east of the Mackenzie
19 route.

20 That evidence which included -

21 THE COMMISSIONER: Fast what?

22 MR. HOLLINGWORTH: That should
23 read "east" rather than "cost", sir.

24 THE COMMISSIONER: Then changed
25 to the --?

26 MR. HOLLINGWORTH: East of the
27 Mackenzie route.

28 That evidence which included
29 the reasons for the change is as applicable to Foothills
30 as it is to Arctic Gas.

1 Secondly, the Foothills
2 location panel testified as to the many miles of route
3 where the Foothills location differs from that of
4 Arctic Gas having considered and rejected part of the
5 Arctic Gas Route, those rejected segments might be
6 considered alternate to the Foothills route.

7 As Arctic Gas has led evidence
8 on its route, there seemed little point to Foothills
9 attempting to duplicate it merely to go through the
10 motions of satisfying paragraph(iii) of the expanded
11 guidelines

12 For these reasons it is
13 Foothills' submission that evidence relating to
14 alternatives to the Foothills route with the broad
15 Mackenzie Valley corridor is already before the
16 Inquiry.

17 Lastly, it is perhaps worth
18 recalling that the Minister directed the Commissioner
19 to hear evidence relating to the difference between
20 the Foothills proposal and the Arctic Gas proposal.
21 It may well be in the light of that direction that al-
22 though Foothills may be required to go into the
23 question of alternative routes in more detail in some
24 other form, the Minister intended that it would not
25 be necessary in this Inquiry for Foothills to go
26 any further in respect to alternatives than Arctic Gas
27 has already done.

28 It is all of that reasoning
29 that has led Foothills to the position not to lead
30 any more evidence on alternatives than it has already done.

1 already been given.

2 THE COMISSIONER: I would be
3 inclined, Mr. Hollingworth, subject to what counsel
4 may say, to agree with you that Foothills has indeed
5 complied with the guidelines. What concerns me is a
6 larger question and I address it to all counsel.

7 At the end of the Inquiry
8 we will be faced, counsel in making their submissions,
9 and then I in making my report, with the necessity
10 of making some assessment of the alternate routes.

11 MR. HOLLINGWORTH: Excuse me,
12 sir, may I interject?

13 THE COMMISSIONER: Yes.

14 MR. HOLLINGWORTH: Do you
15 mean when you say alternate routes, the Fairbanks
16 Corridor and Fort Yukon Corridor when you make that
17 comment?

18 THE COMMISSIONER: Yes.

19 I am throwing these thoughts out for counsel to con-
20 sider and at some later stage you can discuss it
21 at a meeting of counsel and decide whether you want
22 to say anything about it. If you don't that is all
23 right with me. It may be that we have gone as
24 far as we should in the consideration of alternate
25 corridors. The impact on the north, if an alternate
26 corridor were utilized, might be very much greater or
27 very much less than the impact on the north if a
28 pipeline were built along the Mackenzie Valley Corridor.
29 It may be that some reference to those alternate
30 corridors should be made in my report. I want you

1 people to think about this and make submissions on
2 that question to me in due course.

3 If that is so, have we gone
4 as far as we ought to in the consideration of the
5 subject? Do counsel -- and this has nothing to do
6 with whether Arctic Gas or Foothills has complied
7 with the guidelines, it seems to me they have, and
8 have gone as far as we can expect them to do, at this
9 stage -- but the question that you all should consider
10 is whether there is anything to be gained by giving
11 any further consideration to any of the alternate
12 corridors. I address that to you, Mr. Hollingworth,
13 on behalf of Foothills, because Mr. Gibbs and you,
14 acting on behalf of Foothills, have on many occasions
15 sought to demonstrate that the gas from Prudhoe Bay
16 in Alaska can be taken out by the Fairbanks Corridor.
17 If that were to be done it would no doubt enhance
18 the likelihood of the all-Canadian delivery system
19 being adopted that you, on behalf of Foothills have
20 urged.

21 Now, I thought that if you
22 -- I thought that Foothills would tell the Inquiry
23 at some stage, you see, you asked me to make an
24 order that Arctic Gas provide the segmented cost
25 comparison as between the Mackenzie Valley line and
26 the Fairbanks line. Now, you tell me today that
27 you have gone as far as you feel you are obliged to
28 do under the expanded guidelines. I agree, I think
29 you have. I thought that you were going to tell
30 me something about whether you thought the Inquiry

1 should pursue the Fairbanks route any further and I
2 thought that other counsel would tell me whether they
3 felt the Inquiry should pursue the Fairbanks route or
4 any other route any further.

5
6 Now, I am not asking any
7 of you to decide what you want to say about this
8 now, but to think about it. It seems to me that
9 if the Inquiry were to seek to go further into the
10 suitability of any of these alternate routes we would
11 be confronted with a very serious question relating
12 to the whole course of the Inquiry.

13 I think we have gone as
14 far as we are obliged to go under the Inquiry's terms
15 of reference and under the expanded guidelines. What
16 I want to know from counsel is whether counsel take
17 the position that the consideration so far of these
18 alternate routes has brought us to a stage where
19 we should examine any one of the alternates, or more
20 than one of the alternates, in greater detail than
21 we have. I don't think the Inquiry has any obligation,
22 at this stage, to do so under its terms of reference.
23 It may be that we ought not to do so. I am simply
24 concerned that counsel should address themselves to
25 that question, that is, think about it, consider it at a
26 meeting of counsel, if you wish, and certainly, each
27 one of you is free to tell me where you think we ought
28 to go with respect to those alternate routes.

29 Maybe we have gone as far
30 as we can be expected to go as far as we usefully
can go, because there are limits to what you can do in

1 an Inquiry, constraints of time and so on .

2 Well, I hope that I am making
3 myself reasonably clear.

4 MR. GOUDGE: Sir, if I might
5 offer this one comment. It seems to me, respectfully,
6 as if there are two issues. The first, raised by
7 Mr. Hollingworth, directly concerns whether or not
8 Foothills has complied with the guidelines, tabling
9 the statement that they have tabled today, simply
10 in order to preserve it. I may say that my lack of
11 reaction is not taken ^{to be} as an indication of approval,
12 but they have, we may wish to take the position on
13 consideration that they have not. I trust other
14 counsel will adopt the same sort of look at it and
15 react attitude.

16 As to the second question
17 which is of importance for the entire Inquiry as well
18 as any one participant, I suggest, sir, that we
19 list that to be discussed at the next meeting of
20 counsel to be held when we reconvene in order to
21 canvass every individual 's position as to whether
22 they wish to call further evidence on any of these
23 alternate routes because, as you say, sir, if that
24 is the case, and they do wish to call further evidence
25 on any of these other routes, there may be first
26 objections by any one of the individual participants, and
27 secondly it may in any event be an input that ought
28 to be had in determining where we go from here.
29
30

THE COMMISSIONER: Let me just say this so Mr. Gibbs and you can consider it, Mr. Hollingworth.' You persuaded me to make an order that there would be a segmented cost comparison between Fairbanks and Mackenzie Valley, and I'm not discounting these other alternate routes that have been discussed.

Now, if because the point that Drs. Rutter and Roed have made, is a point that still remains to be considered, even if you adopt the Fairbanks route for taking out Prudhoe Bay gas, you got me to make that order. I made it. Arctic Gas has complied. We now have a segmented cost breakdown comparing Fairbanks, the Fairbanks route to the Mackenzie Valley route. Having obtained it, does Foothills say, "All right, we've seen the figures, it is clear that Arctic Gas is right as they insisted when we heard their evidence at Whitehorse, and that the Fairbanks route is not a practical route for the delivery of Prudhoe Bay gas because the constraints of costs are so very much greater than in the case of the Mackenzie Valley Route", or does Foothills wish to say, having obtained that evidence pursuant to my order, "We think there should be a further examination of this route"?

Now maybe you have nothing to say. I'm not asking you to do so, but I must say that I was sort of suspended in mid-air waiting for the other shoe to drop and you didn't drop it today.

MR. HOLLINGWORTH: Well, sir, I do want to get instructions on this, but my preliminary remarks would be this, and I would like to distinguish

1 between the position whether Foothills ought to
2 advance evidence of its own, and what Foothills chooses
3 to do, subject to your consent, on the basis of
4 representations by counsel, what Foothills chooses to
5 do with the representations made by Arctic Gas.
6 I think there is a difference there.

7
8 I'm certainly not stating in
9 this statement that we're going to take the figures that
10 Arctic Gas left with us and do nothing further with
11 them. In fact it's our desire to cross-examine Mr.
12 Dau on those figures.

13 THE COMMISSIONER: Yes, in
14 fact he was to be cross-examined last week.

15 MR. HOLLINGWORTH: That's
16 correct. As far as presenting evidence of alternate
17 corridors, Foothills takes the position that the
18 expanded guidelines don't call for that, that they
19 call for a discussion on the routes within a corridor
20 on which the government is prepared to receive appli-
21 cations. Now the fact that Arctic Gas has chosen to
22 present evidence on alternate corridors is neither
23 here nor there with respect to Foothills' evidence
24 in chief, I respectfully submit.

25 THE COMMISSIONER: Well yes,
26 I think you have complied with the guidelines. I am
27 not asking you to do anything, let alone requiring
28 you to do anything, except to tell me where you stand
29 on the Fairbanks corridor on the evidence that was
30 adduced. You don't have to tell me now.

MR. HOLLINGWORTH: My feeling

1 is, and I may be completely wrong on this after I
2 receive instructions, but my feeling is that we do
3 want to do something with the figures that have
4 been provided to us by Mr. Marshall, but I don't
5 believe that we plan to call rebuttal evidence, if
6 that's what you have in mind, to say that the Fairbanks
7 route is much to be preferred.

8 THE COMMISSIONER: No.

9 MR. HOLLINGWORTH: I don't
10 expect that, and my preliminary feeling on that would
11 be that it would be completely outside the terms of
12 reference.

13 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, that's
14 my concern and that's why I wanted you to --

15 MR. HOLLINGWORTH: But I will
16 certainly put my mind to this and discuss it with Mr.
17 Gibbs.

18 THE COMMISSIONER: I think we
19 have reached the borders of the Inquiry and I am
20 anxious to know whether anyone wanted to stick their
21 big toe across the line, and Foothills looked as if
22 they were ready to, and -- well, that's fine. I
23 think it's important that we enter this and that you
24 give it some thought.

25 Well, thank you again, Dr.
26 Roed. I have a horrible feeling this isn't the end
27 of the afternoon's evidence.

28 MR. GOUDGE: Mr. Commissioner,
29 I was about to say we have one more item on our agenda
30 for this week, and if we could prevail for another hour

1 and a half or two hours, I think it would be possible
2 to complete that today. I'm in your hands though, sir.

3 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, all
4 right, let's start, but I give you fair warning this
5 is the third week in a row that I've been sitting and
6 to be fair to everybody I don't want to be trying to
7 assimilate things when I'm no longer able to. But let's
8 start and see how far we get, and if we don't make
9 any headway we'll have to come back tomorrow.

10 The next item on the agenda
11 would then be Mr. Carter leading the evidence in chief
12 of Arctic Gas' first panel in Phase 2-3.

13 MR. CARTER: We have finally
14 arrived at Phase 2.

15 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, make
16 it snappy then. I've only got until Christmas. Well
17 go ahead, we're late in the day. I was thinking of
18 a cartoon that appeared six months ago.

19 MR. CARTER: We wasted a bit
20 of time with Mr. Hollingworth. I think his worry is
21 that he might have to change the name of his company,
22 if he got away from the Foothills or something.

23 THE COMMISSIONER: That's a
24 devastating remark.

25 MR. CARTER: The first panel,
26 sir, is made up of a number of witnesses but the evi-
27 dence in chief I propose to have read in by Miss
28 Gretchin Minning. She has been sworn, if I could just
29 briefly review her resume.
30

Miss G. Minning
In Chief

MISS GRETCHIN MINNING, sworn:

DIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. CARTER:

Q Miss Minning, you are present a senior staff geologist with Northern Engineering Services?

A Yes.

Q And with respect to your education, you received a B.Sc. in geology from Lawrence University, Wisconsin, in 1965.

A That's correct.

Q And your Masters in geology from the University of Washington in 1967.

A That's correct.

Q And you're a member of the Geological Association of Canada, the Association of Professional Engineers, Geologists & Geophysicists of Alberta.

A That is correct.

Q From 1967 to 1973 you were a scientific officer in the Terrain Sciences Division of the Geological Survey of Canada.

A That's correct.

Q And in 1973 you joined N.E.S.

A That's correct.

Q And your publications are listed in an appendix.

A That's correct.

Q Your responsibilities with Northern Engineering relate to the geological

Miss G. Minning
In Chief

1 aspects of the terrain crossed by the proposed pipeline.

2 A That's correct.

3 Q Now, if we could begin
4 with the evidence, I'd ask you, Miss Minning, to
5 indicate while going through the evidence which of the
6 witnesses the evidence relates to, and this will be
7 helpful for my friends in cross-examination.

8 A The title:

9 "The Impact of the Pipeline and Mackenzie
10 Corridor Development of the Physical Environment."

11 First heading, "Terrain".

12 This section will be led by R.A. Hemstock. First
13 comments, general:

14 The soil, bedrock, and surface
15 conditions along the proposed pipeline route are
16 highly variable but nevertheless classifiable into a
17 number of discrete terrain units. Although terrain
18 typing provides useful general information on the
19 physical and engineering properties of the surficial
20 materials on the proposed route, this information is
21 necessarily subject to the range of variability inherent
22 within each terrain unit. For this reason, Arctic Gas
23 does not propose to use terrain typing alone but to use
24 terrain typing in conjunction with on-site examination,
25 extensive drilling and sub-soil sampling, and considera-
26 tion of environmental factors in the development and
27 application of final geotechnical and other pipeline-
28 related designs.

29 Most of the area traversed by
30 the proposed pipeline route has been glaciated except

Miss G. Minning
In Chief

1 for a small area in the mountainous region of the
2 interior alternative route and west of the Firth River
3 on the coastal route. The glaciated areas are char-
4 acterized by a variety of soils including till, glacio-
5 lacustrine silts and sands, and glaciofluvial sands,
6 silts and gravel.
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

1 The organic content of the
2 surficial materials varies markedly along the route.
3 This is due largely to the differences in drainage
4 and climate.

5 Ground ice content in the
6 surficial materials is also highly variable and is
7 dependent largely on the texture of the material and
8 climate. Along the Coastal Plain and in the Mackenzie
9 Delta, ground ice may comprise more than 50 percent by
10 volume of the upper 15 feet. In its grosser forms,
11 the ice occurs within the soil matrix as predominately
12 horizontal, very thin to thick, as thin reticulate ice
13 veins, and as vertically-oriented ice wedge polygons.
14 In the same areas, dry soils - especially coarser-grained
15 ones - may have negligible ground ice content.

16 In general, permafrost is
17 continuous along the proposed coastal and interior routes
18 north and west of Fort MacPherson. To the south in the
19 discontinuous permafrost zone, permafrost and non-
20 permafrost areas are intermingled. On the proposed
21 route, the first extensive patches of unfrozen ground
22 occur in the vicinity of Fort Good Hope. The
23 ratio of non-permafrost to permafrost terrain increases
24 from north to south. The coarser-textured, better-
25 drained and exposed sites are often unfrozen to
26 substantial depths, whereas the finer-grained soils
27 which commonly underlie the flatter and wetter ground
28 with a thicker organic cover are frozen at shallow
29 depths throughout the year. North of Wrigley, perma-
30 frost terrain is generally dominant. At about the 60th
parallel, permafrost is largely limited to patches.

1 Because of the inherent
2 variability in soil, climatic and permafrost conditions
3 along the proposed route, the impact of the Arctic
4 Gas pipeline on the physical environment will also
5 be variable and dependent on specific site conditions.
6 For instance, the impact of a chilled pipeline on the
7 physical environment will depend on whether the ground
8 is frozen or unfrozen, and if it is frozen on the ice con-
9 tent. If the ground is frozen, the potential for
10 frost heaving due to operation of the chilled pipeline
11 will be low whereas the potential for thaw settle-
12 ment following clearing of the right-of-way or surface
13 disturbance may be high. If the ground is unfrozen,
14 the potential for frost heave under certain conditions
15 may be high whereas the potential for thaw settlement
16 will be nil.

17 Subheading two: Permanent
18 and Temporary Land Requirements. To facilitate the
19 construction of the pipeline and ancillary
20 facilities, Arctic Gas has applied in general for a
21 120 foot right-of-way for the 1150 miles of pipeline
22 within the Yukon and Northwest Territories, the right-
23 of-way itself would require about 17,250 acres or 27
24 square miles. This includes the requirement for
25 additional land at major river crossings.

26 In addition to the land
27 required for the pipeline right-of-way, approximately
28 273 acres or 0.4 square miles, within the Yukon and
29 Northwest Territories will be required for construction
30 of compressor stations, 971 acres or 2.9 square miles,

1 for the construction of 66.5 miles of permanent project
2 roads, 2410 acres or 0.8 square miles for construction
3 of airstrips and 185 acres or 0.3 square miles for
4 wharfs.

5 In total, the estimated permanent
6 land requirement is 21,109 acres or approximately
7 33 square miles within the Yukon and Northwest Terri-
8 tries.

9 The temporary land requirements
10 within the Yukon and Northwest Territories include
11 3920 acres or 6.1 square miles, for borrow pits;
12 297 acres or 0.5 square miles, for material stock pile
13 sites; and 1195 acres or 1.9 square miles for the
14 construction of 238 miles of temporary access roads.
15 The total temporary land requirement is 5412 acres or
16 approximately 8.5 square miles.

17 The foregoing estimates of
18 the temporary and permanent land requirements include
19 the East of Fort Simpson route relocation, but not
20 the possible Cross Delta alternative currently under
21 consideration by Canadian Arctic Gas.

22 Subsection three, Borrow
23 Requirements. I will be the person speaking to this
24 section. The major requirements for borrow materials
25 will be in the construction of pipeline facilities
26 which include permanent access roads, airstrips, and
27 compressor station pads. Lesser quantities of
28 borrow will also be required for the construction
29 of drainage and erosion control measures, for slope
30 stabilization, and for the construction of a surcharge

G. Minning
In Chief

1 berm over a selected portions of the pipeline ditch for
2 control of frost heaving. The quality of grade or borrow
3 material needed will vary depending upon the specific
4 application. For example, coarse granular material
5 may be required for the construction of certain
6 drainage and erosion control measures while the main
7 requirements for borrow for the surcharge berm are
8 that it provide weight and that it is stable in the
9 thawed or unfrozen condition.

10 In total, approximately
11 30 million cubic yards of borrow material are estimated
12 to be needed for all construction requirements for
13 the Canadian segment of the pipeline north of the
14 60th parallel. Borrow requirements for Operations
15 and Maintenance are included in these figures.

16 The location of preferred
17 alternate borrow sources are shown on the pipeline route
18 maps contained in Section 13.a.2 of the Application.
19 Current estimates show 26 borrow sites will be required
20 on the pipeline segment between the Alaska/Yukon
21 border and the Travaillant Lake Junction. A require-
22 ment is estimated for about 72 borrow pits on the pipeline
23 segment between Richards Island and the Alberta/
24 Northwest Territories border.

25 The majority of the borrow
26 pits will be developed and worked in the winter
27 season. Most of the access roads connecting the borrow
28 pits with haul destinations will be winter or
29 snow roads. Borrow pits which will be used during
30 all seasons will have permanent access roads.

1 There will be a slide presentation at this point.

2 Point four, Mitigative Measures
3 and this will be spoken to by G.L. Williams. Arctic
4 Gas has attempted insofar as possible to minimize
5 the impact on the physical and living environment by:

6 1) judicious route selection and avoidance, where
7 practical of potentially sensitive permafrost and
8 terrain;

9 2) development of Arctic construction techniques
10 to minimize terrain disturbance;

11 3) development of a chilled pipeline system;

12 4) restoration and revegetation; and,

13 5) incorporation into the pipeline system design
14 measures for drainage and erosion control, and for
15 slope stabilization.

16 Section 4.1, called Route
17 Selection. The route selection and refinement criteria
18 have been considered in detail as part of --

19 THE COMMISSIONER: This is
20 something that Mr. Williams will speak to ?

21 A This is right, this
22 will be an expansion of point one of those things that
23 I just read to you.

24 The route selection and
25 refinement criteria have been considered in detail as
26 part of Phase I. Arctic Gas has undertaken and is
27 continuing to undertake studies aimed at route
28 refinement and improvement in the overall pipeline
29 design. Arctic Gas recognizes that as the result of
30 detailed site investigations and drilling which form

G. Minning
In Chief

1 part of final design, further changes in the route
2 may be indicated for environmental or geotechnical
3 reasons; however, it is anticipated further
4 changes in the proposed route will be relatively minor.

5 4.2) Arctic Construction.

6 Arctic construction techniques have been described by
7 the construction panel and will not be discussed in detail
8 here. They would include such measures as the use of
9 fill rather than cutting to achieve grade, use of snow
10 roads and hand clearing.

11 4.3) Chilled Pipeline. Once

12 in operation, a buried chilled pipeline will act to
13 maintain the permafrost along the line.

14 4.4) Restoration and Revegetation.

15 This will be spoken to by D.L. Dabbs. Following
16 pipelaying and backfilling of the ditch, the plant
17 cover on the pipeline right-of-way will be restored as
18 completely as practical. Following winter construction
19 the right-of-way and backfill mound over the pipeline
20 will be seeded and fertilized. Revised revegetation
21 specifications and techniques of implementation are
22 contained in Appendix C.

23 As a possible aid in revegetation
24 in revegetation in tundra areas, approximately the
25 upper 18 inches of the tundra will be stripped from the
26 ditchline prior to ditch excavation and stored outside the
27 spoil bank area. Following ditching and backfill operations,
28 the organic material will be replaced on top of
29 the backfill mound. Even if only a small amount of the
30 tundra vegetation survives this harsh treatment, the
the organic material will serve as a mulch for re-establishment of the tundra vegetation and provide added insulation to the backfill mound.

Miss G. Minning
In Chief

On slopes greater than 3% it may be necessary to provide extra treatment over and above seeding and fertilization to establish an erosion resistant plant cover. This treatment may take the form of hand planting of shrub cuttings separately or together with the laying of erosion control mat to prevent washout of seed and fertilizer and to provide an insulative cover. Abandoned roads and borrow pits will be recontoured and seeded. Borrow pits may require extra treatment in the form of salvaging organic overburden prior to operations in the pit followed by the replacement of the overburden which will be mechanically worked into the soil, followed by seeding.

The applicant recognizes the variability of climatic conditions which may affect the success of re-seeding programs. A right-of-way surveillance and monitoring program will be established to detect and identify areas which require further treatment in the form of seeding, fertilization or hand treatment on the ground. Maintenance of the right-of-way will continue for the lifetime of the project, though it is anticipated that most areas will have a stable plant cover established within the first three to five years.

There will be a slide presentation here on re-vegetation.

4.5. Drainage and erosion control and slope stabilization measures. The techniques for both drainage and erosion control and slope

Miss G. Minning
In Chief

1 stability having been illustrated by the geotechnical
2 panel called in Phase 1, and the hydrological design
3 methodology has been fully outlined in a report
4 entitled: "Drainage & Erosion Control - Proposed
5 Measures and Description"

6 (Northern Engineering Services Co. Ltd.,
7 March 1975)

8 The slope stabilization techniques have been outlined
9 in "Slope Stability in Permafrost Terrain" (Northern
10 Engineering Services Co. Ltd., December 1974).

11 Hydrologic considerations will be dealt with later
12 in the testimony.

13 This is sub-heading 5.

14 Impact Assessment, this will be given by R.A. Hemstock.
15 Under this Section 5 is 5.1, impact on resources.

16 The project will require use
17 of 33 square miles for the life of the project and
18 temporary use of an additional 8.5 square miles of
19 land in the Territories. Land required for the right-
20 of-way will not be preempted for exclusive pipeline
21 use, as trapping, hunting, etc. can carry on over
22 the right-of-way. Given the vast land area of the
23 Territories we do not consider this impact to be
24 significant.

25 With respect to borrow, the
26 DIAND granular materials inventory has estimated
27 reserves in the Mackenzie Valley to be in excess of
28 900 million cubic yards. The total requirement of the
29 Arctic Gas project for DIAND Class 1, 2 and 3 materials
30 is estimated to be about 30 million cubic yards. This

Miss G. Minning
In Chief

1 represents approximately 3.4% of the total reserves.
2 Accordingly, ample reserves would remain to meet fore-
3 seeable requirements, although we recognize that be-
4 cause of uneven distribution of resources some long
5 hauls may be involved.

6 5.2. Impact of construction,

7 The removal of vegetation and damage to the organic
8 mat are the major causes of change to the existing
9 thermal regime in permafrost terrain. Removal of the
10 vegetation, for example, could result in a decrease
11 in surface insulation and alterations in surface re-
12 flectivity, thermal conductivity and diffusivity of the
13 organic mat, rates of evapo-transpiration and other
14 micro-climatic factors. Where these conditions do
15 occur and they are not offset by cover restoration and
16 re-vegetation, changes in permafrost terrain can result
17 in an increase in the thickness of the active layer
18 and ponding and channelization of surface runoff.

19 We recognize that in those situations where the depth
20 of the active layer is increased, a potential for thermo-
21 karst development does exist and that direct measures
22 for the control of drainage may be required. Distur-
23 bance to the organic mat will be minimized in Arctic
24 construction areas, cut grading will be kept to the
25 minimum, and construction will utilize snow roads and
26 working surfaces.

27 On slopes and sensitive
28 terrain (for example, at a few river crossing locations)
29 clearing of the pipeline right-of-way may be left until
30 immediately prior to pipe-laying operations to minimize

Miss G. Minning
In Chief

1 degradation following disturbance. In such situations
2 the implemen tation of erosion control and slope
3 stabilization measures will be carried out immediately
4 following pipeline construction. As pipe-laying and
5 construction of erosion control measures will occur
6 prior to snow melt in the same winter as construction,
7 there will be little requirement for temporary erosion
8 control measures. Similarly, gravel fill may be placed
9 immediately following pipe-laying operations on slopes
10 that are potentially unstable on thawing. The gravel
11 fill significantly increases terrain stability if
12 degradation occurs following removal of the forest
13 cover.

14 The maintenance and/or augment-
15 ation of snow cover on the right-of-way will be a
16 feature of Arctic construction provides a protective
17 cover over the ground vegetation and provides a base
18 for construction of snow roads for the movement of men
19 and construction equipment. The snow road tests demon-
20 strate that the impact of construction on vegetation
21 along the right-of-way, protected by a snow road, will
22 be minimal and recovery of the vegetation will be rapid.

23 Terrain modifications caused
24 by the development of borrow pits and quarry sites,
25 construction pads, and access roads are themselves
26 changes to the natural topography that will persist.
27 However, the total area involved is relatively small
28 and for the most part will be restored for wildlife.
29 Where appropriate, these areas will be recontoured and
30 re-vegetated prior to abandonment.

Miss G. Minning
In Chief

1 In summary, it is our opinion that the impact
2 of construction activities on terrain will not be
3 significant or of a long-term nature.

4 5.3 Impact of operations
5 and maintenance. The operations and maintenance
6 activities have been described in detail in Phase 1.
7 As the anticipated risk of a major failure is very
8 low, so too is the likelihood of major terrain
9 disturbance resulting from unscheduled repair
10 operations. Flexibility in scheduling permanent repairs
11 will lessen the risk of significant terrain damage.
12 If damage does occur, restoration and re-vegetation will
13 be carried out. Routine operations and maintenance
14 will primarily employ aircraft. Overall we are of the
15 opinion that the impact of operations and maintenance
16 on terrain will be minimal.

17 Section 5.4. This section
18 will be presented by J.I. Clark, called impact of
19 a chilled pipeline. The plan calls for the pipeline
20 to be operated in a chilled mode throughout most of
21 its length north of the 60th Parallel. The last point
22 where chilling facilities are located is at compressor
23 station ME-15 at Milepost 674. The last point of cold
24 flow (that is where gas temperatures are continuously
25 below 0 degrees Centigrade) once full pipeline operation
26 is achieved, is at compressor station ME-18 at Milepost
27 810 north of the Alberta-Northwest Territories border.

28 Although many of the potential
29 engineering and environmental problems that may occur
30 as a result of permafrost degradation following clearing

Miss G. Minning
In Chief

1 of the right-of-way and surface disturbance are
2 minimized by its use, chilled pipeline operation may
3 create a new set of problems that must be considered.
4 For instance, the operation of a pipeline at tempera-
5 tures less than 0 degrees Centigrade (32 degrees
6 Fahrenheit) in unfrozen ground will result in the
7 development of a frozen zone or frost bulb around the
8 pipe. The size and configuration of the frost bulb will
9 depend on the operating temperature of the pipe, burial
10 depth, local climatic conditions, temperature and
11 rates of groundwater movement, and time since initia-
12 tion of pipeline operation. Under adverse conditions,
13 it can be anticipated that the development of the
14 frost bulb around the buried pipe may interrupt sub-
15 surface drainage and result in a potential for frost
16 heave. These effects are discussed in the following
17 sections.

18 In permafrost terrain the
19 operation of a buried pipeline at temperatures less
20 than 0 degrees Centigrade (32 degrees Fahrenheit)
21 may alter the thickness of the active layer over the
22 pipeline, but otherwise has little effect on terrain.
23 The results of CAGSL studies have shown that rates
24 of water migration in permafrost soils are sufficiently
25 small to effectively preclude significant frost heave
26 in frozen ground over the operational life of the
27 pipeline.

28 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, I
29 guess that's settled then.
30

1 THE COMMISSIONER: Well,
2 I guess that is settled then, Mr. Carter, is it?
3 We can move on to other matters?

4 MR. CARTER: That is right.

5 THE COMMISSIONER: Go ahead,
6 Miss Minning, we are just --

7 A Oh, I know.

8 5.4.1. This section will
9 be presented by R.L. Harlan. Effects on Surface and
10 Subsurface Drainage. The results of the geothermal
11 analyses have shown that in permafrost terrain the
12 operation of a buried chilled pipeline may affect
13 the depth of the active layer over a distance of 10 to
14 20 feet on either side of the pipe. Whereas the
15 ground over the pipe will freeze in winter as will
16 the rest of the active layer, the presence of the cold
17 pipe will not prevent the development of an active layer
18 in summer. This has been confirmed at the test
19 facilities both in Canada and Alaska.

20 The geothermal analyses have
21 further shown that the base of the active layer over
22 the pipe will be somewhat higher depending upon the
23 depth of burial and climatic zone, than that over the
24 remainder of the right-of-way. If adequate drainage
25 measures are not provided, this could result in ponding
26 of water on the upslope side of the pipeline right-of-way.
27 The effects, however, would be localized due to the
28 natural variations in the ground surface and in the
29 depth of the active layer. Water ponded on the
30 upslope side of the right of way will tend to move

1 laterally and cross the pipeline where the elevation
2 of the ground surface or base of the active layer over
3 the pipeline was lower. In general, the tendency for
4 ponding to occur on the upslope side of the pipeline
5 will be confined to natural depressions. For all
6 but the gentlest slopes, e.g. less than 2 %, the effects
7 of ponding will be limited to the right-of-way.

8 To provide for the redistribu-
9 tion of water across the backfill mound over the
10 pipeline, a variety of techniques have been proposed.
11 These are described in the Application. Mound breaks,
12 for example, will be provided at natural drainages
13 and at intervals along the right-of-way. The spacing
14 of mound breaks will be sufficient to prevent the
15 accumulation of surface and subsurface runoff inter-
16 cepted by the pipeline during a design storm event from
17 obtaining "erosive" velocities. As dictated by
18 environmental as well as economic considerations,
19 additional erosion protection will be provided
20 as required. This protection will be provided through
21 the use of select backfill, granular protection,
22 riprapping and physical control measures such as
23 diversion dikes, ditch plugs and dispersion barriers.
24 While the physical control measures are intended for
25 stabilization and protection of the pipeline right
26 of-way during the post-construction period until a pro-
27 tective vegetative cover can be re-established, revege-
28 tation will provide the primary means for erosion
29 control in the long-term. In the more northerly
30 portions of the route, it is anticipated that up to four

G. Minning
 In Chief

1 or five years may be required before revegetation
 2 can be depended upon for protection of the
 3 right-of-way and the backfill mound. In permafrost
 4 terrain, Arctic construction techniques will be em-
 5 ployed which will minimize surface disturbance and
 6 erosion on the right-of-way. In the more southerly
 7 portions of the route, however, the time required for
 8 re-establishment of the vegetative cover is much
 9 shorter. Under favourable conditions, the time required
 10 for re-establishment of an effective vegetation
 11 cover may be as short as one growing season.

12 We recognize that there will be
 13 situations, such as on steep slopes at river crossing lo-
 14 cations, where physical erosion control measures will
 15 be required to protect the integrity of the pipeline
 16 and to minimize erosion.

17 Based upon analyses of hy-
 18 drologic and climatological conditions along the
 19 pipeline route, design criteria and generalized de-
 20 signs are being developed for drainage and erosion
 21 control. These will serve as guidelines for
 22 implementation of the proposed design in the field.
 23 Final selection and placement of alternative control
 24 measures must and will be made in the field prior
 25 to and during construction. A program of regular
 26 surveillance and maintenance is planned to correct
 27 any problems should they develop, to maintain
 28 effectiveness of the control measures and to provide
 29 for refinement of design criteria based on the per-
 30 formance of the various control measures.

G. Minning
In Chief

1 With regard to the effects
2 of interruption of subsurface drainage on downslope
3 soil-water conditions, it is reemphasized that
4 the operation of a chilled pipeline will not prevent
5 the development of an active layer over the pipe or
6 prevent all movement of water through the earth mound
7 over the pipe. Although the interruption and diversion
8 of part of the subsurface flow is inevitable at least
9 during short periods of the year, the effects will be
10 largely local in extent. Normal dispersion of
11 subsurface flow down slope of the pipeline will act
12 to minimize the effect of local interruptions of
13 flow and changes in soil-water conditions. Rain fall
14 and snowmelt will also serve to restore soil - moisture
15 conditions downslope of the Pipeline. For these
16 reasons there will not be a significant-difference
17 in soil moisture conditions up slope and downslope
18 of the pipeline which could lead to a gradual shift
19 in plant species composition.

20 To place the magnitude
21 of the potential problems due to interruption
22 of subsurface drainage in perspective, within the
23 dis-continuous permafrost zone between Travaillant Lake
24 at Milepost 221.0 and the Alberta/Northwest Territories
25 -- a distance of approximately 582 miles -- only
26 about 7% of the proposed alignment is on cross
27 slopes greater than three degrees. In total this
28 represents about 41 miles. Of these 41 miles, less
29 than 9 miles are on slopes greater than 10 degrees. Of
30 importance is the fact of all cross slopes greater

1 than 10°, less than one miles is classified as being
2 in unfrozen terrain of high to moderate permeability.

3 The Applicant recognizes
4 that during freeze-up in the fall of the year in-
5 terruption of flow in the active layer could result
6 in an increase in incidence of ground icings along the
7 pipeline right-of-way. As conditions favourable
8 for icing formation will exist only for a relatively
9 short period in the fall or early winter, the possible
10 increased incidence of icings is not considered
11 to constitute an important factor from an environmental
12 point-of-view or to adversely affect the integrity of the
13 pipeline. The Applicant recognizes that the occurrence
14 of ground icings may affect the performance of the
15 drainage and erosion control measures. Where the
16 performance of erosion and drainage control measures
17 is affected by the occurrence of a ground icing,
18 appropriate corrective measures will be taken as
19 part of the regular maintenance work. In those sit-
20 uations where icings present a recurring maintenance pro-
21 blem, steps can be taken to force the occurance of the
22 icing upslope and away from the pipeline right-
23 of-way. There will be a slide presentation on ground
24 icings right here.

25 Section 5.4.2 Frost Heave.

26 J.I. Clark. As noted previously, although the
27 chilled pipeline concept eliminates many of the
28 potential problems due to terrain disturbance and
29 degradation of the permafrost, it introduces other
30 problems. One of these is related to frost heave and

G. Minning
In Chief

1 its effect on the terrain and the integrity of the
2 pipeline. The effects of frost heaving on the
3 pipeline and on the terrain have been considered in the
4 extensive studies conducted by Arctic Gas. In considering
5 the effect on terrain, it is convenient to group
6 potential frost heave problems into two categories:

7 Category 1: Frost heave in permafrost soils;

8 Category 2: Frost heave in unfrozen ground.

9 The first section, Frost
10 Heave in Permafrost Soils. The applicant recognizes
11 that theoretically moisture migration and frost
12 heaving is possible in permafrost or frozen soils
13 and has examined this problem in considerable
14 detail. Geothermal analyses have shown that in
15 permafrost terrain the operation of a buried, chilled
16 pipeline will not significantly alter the natural
17 thermal gradients at depth beneath the pipeline;
18 consequently, moisture migration due to the
19 presence of thermal gradients directly beneath the
20 pipeline will not be significantly affected. It is
21 recognized, however, that the thermal gradients and
22 hence moisture transfer in the immediate proximity to the
23 pipe will be affected. The implications with
24 regard to frost heaving can be shown to be minimal.
25 In the applicant's judgment, therefore, frost heave
26 in permafrost does not constitute a potential problem
27 from either an environmental or engineering point of
28 view.

29 This is case two: Frost Heave
30 in Unfrozen Ground. In the continuous permafrost

G. Minning
In Chief

1 zone the only unfrozen ground of significant areal
2 extent along the proposed route, in which the pipe would
3 be buried, is located at river crossings. Although
4 the Applicant has not conducted test drilling at all
5 river crossings, it is recognized that there is
6 unfrozen ground below some rivers but that for other
7 rivers, which have small summer flows and which
8 freeze off in the winter, most of the ground below them
9 is frozen. The Applicant has examined in the field all
10 river crossings and has observed that the beds of the
11 majority of rivers consist of non-frost susceptible
12 gravel. Detailed test drilling to be carried out
13 prior to final design, however, may indicate that there
14 is unfrozen frost susceptible ground beneath the
15 gravel bed in some of these rivers. Moreover, some of
16 the smaller rivers and the Mackenzie River itself have
17 fine grained soils beneath the river bed, which are
18 not frozen. In the case of the smaller river crossings
19 which have fine grained soils in the riverbed it is
20 proposed that the crossings will be buried at sufficient
21 depth so that the overburden pressure will restrict
22 the rate of heave to within tolerable limits.

Miss G. Minning
In Chief

Thus the depth of burial required to cross frost-susceptible soil bed will be determined on the basis of a thermal analysis taking into account both frost heave and the freezing off of the soil above the pipe, rather than on the basis of scour considerations.

In the case of the Mackenzie, the depth of burial required for scour considerations is likely greater than the depth of overburden required to inhibit frost heave, and it will therefore govern. The load on the frost front at the burial depth will be substantial so that the potential rate of heave will be significantly lower than if the same soil were near the ground surface. The results of our study and others on frost heaving clearly shows the dramatic effect of an increased overburden pressure on reduction and rate of heave. For frost-heaving around a pipeline at major river crossings mainly to be taken into account during design, and method of analysis employed will be similar to those used where the pipe is buried in unfrozen ground in discontinuous permafrost zone.

These methods have been developed by Arctic Gas during its major study of frost effects initiated about 1 1/2 years ago. The applicant believes that its present method of predicting frost heave is conservative so that the field, laboratory and engineering studies are planned to continue to 1975. This will permit further refinement of the method of analysis to increase the base

Miss G. Minning
In Chief

1 of field analysis and frost heave data for soils along
2 the route.

3 5.5 Effect on warm pipeline
4 operation.

5 5.5.1 Thaw settlement. The
6 operation of a buried pipeline at temperatures above
7 zero degrees Centigrade (32 degrees Fahrenheit) in
8 permafrost terrain will, in the long run, result in
9 degradation of the permafrost. The rate at which
10 permafrost degradation will occur depends on a number
11 of factors including the temperature of the pipe and
12 the ground, and the ice content and its distribution in
13 the permafrost.

14 The applicant currently plans
15 to design the system to conduct gas at above freezing
16 temperatures south of Station M-18. This means that
17 approximately 170 miles of pipeline will pass through
18 discontinuous permafrost with the gas at above zero
19 degrees Centigrade. This area of the discontinuous
20 permafrost zone is believed to be of low ice content
21 with permafrost occurring in small scattered areas.
22 The applicant recognizes that there is likely a zone
23 within which the last point of cold flow can be optimized
24 so as to present the most favorable combination of limited
25 potential for thaw settlement and limited potential
26 for frost heave. Studies to further define this zone
27 are currently under way.

28 The applicant appreciates the
29 fact that differential settlement of the pipe and
30 ground surface may result along this section of the

Miss G. Minning
In Chief

1 pipeline and excess pore water pressures and reduced
2 soil shear strengths can be generated during thawing
3 of frozen soils. It is further recognized that under
4 extreme conditions liquification or zero effective
5 stress conditions may be induced resulting in slope
6 instability and loss of bearing capacity. Techniques are
7 available to take these features into account during
8 final design of the pipeline.

9 5.5.2. Erosion due to
10 thawing of ice-rich soils. The general principles for
11 erosion control are:

- 12 1. To construct from select backfill, breaks in
13 the pipeline mound at all identifiable natural drainage
14 channels;
- 15 2. To provide additional breaks where necessary to
16 direct surface flow across the mound before erosive
17 flow velocities are achieved during a design storm event;
- 18 3. To protect the mound in areas of high erodability
19 with select backfill; and
- 20 4. To provide special measures such as diversion dikes
21 and riprap as required.

22 In general, the same design
23 criteria will be applied to both ice-rich and thaw stable
24 soils except that the permissible velocity criteria will
25 be reduced for ice-rich soils. As a result, exposed
26 ice-rich soil will generally be provided with protection
27 by select backfill except in areas of negligible slope.
28 Arctic Gas accepts the fact that regular maintenance
29 will be required to maintain the effectiveness of the
30 drainage and erosion control measures.

Miss G. Minning
In Chief

1 This is 5.6, Impact of
2 abandonment. This will be R.H. Harlan.

3 5.6.1, previously unfrozen
4 ground. Where the pipeline is operated at below freez-
5 ing temperatures in naturally unfrozen ground, a frost
6 bulb will be formed around the pipe. The size of the
7 ~~frost~~ bulb will vary along the route and will depend
8 upon many factors, such as average local air temperatures,
9 thermal properties of the soil, operating temperatures
10 of the pipe and the number of years that the pipeline
11 is operational before abandonment.

12 By definition, the frost bulb
13 around the pipe at the time of abandonment will be per-
14 mafrost. Although there are difficulties in predicting
15 whether this artificially maintained permafrost will
16 degrade or not, it is the applicant's judgment at this
17 time that most, if not all, of these types of created
18 permafrost situations will eventually thaw out after
19 the pipeline is abandoned. The frost bulb will thaw
20 back slowly after the pipeline becomes inoperative.
21 This process will normally take more years than it
22 took to form the frost bulb. This is because the average
23 temperature of the ground around the operating pipe is mor-
24 degrees below freezing than the natural unfrozen average
25 ground temperatures are above freezing. Because of the
26 low rates of thaw associated with this type of frozen
27 ground regression, the rates at which water is released
28 is also low. This means that in most cases very low
29 excess pore pressures will develop and so the potential
30 for slope failure will also be low.

Miss G. Minning
In Chief

During the development of the frost bulb the local ground surface above the operating pipe will slowly rise to a greater or lesser extent depending mostly on the soil and water table conditions, due to the expansion of the in-situ water upon freezing and to possible ice lens formation. As the frost bulb thaws out after abandonment, the level of the ground surface will slowly become lower, perhaps an average of an inch or two per year, and tend towards its original level.

5.6.2. Permafrost terrain.

In some cases mainly in the southern part of the discontinuous permafrost zone, the removal of the trees and shrubs from the right-of-way during construction could cause the permafrost to degrade in the long term. The operation of the pipeline at below freezing temperatures will counter the tendency of the permafrost to thaw out. The fact that permafrost will exist naturally along side of the right-of-way will also tends to maintain the permafrost in the right-of-way, during the years that the pipeline is in operation. Also some of the natural shrubs and trees will be allowed to /re-establish themselves so that when the pipeline is finally abandoned the local permafrost situation will likely be stable.

It is possible in some cases after the pipeline is abandoned, that the permafrost along the right-of-way would thaw out in the long-term. This could be due to factors such as changes in the vegetation or long-term changes in climate.

Miss G. Minning
InChief

1 Although at this time it is very difficult to predict
2 with confidence whether or not permafrost will thaw
3 out in the long-term, it is possible to reasonably
4 predict the rate of thaw if in fact the permafrost
5 would degrade with time. This information, along with
6 knowledge of the ice content of the permafrost, can then
7 be used in the determination of surface settlement and
8 in the evaluation of slope stability. An indication
9 of the areas along the right-of-way where permafrost
10 degradation may occur could be obtained by observing
11 the changes in the permafrost table near the edges of
12 the right-of-way after several years of operation.

13 This is the next section on
14 water resources. First section of this section is
15 the general comment by -- to be led by Peter McCart.

16 The proposed pipeline route
17 along the Northwest Territories lies largely within
18 the drainage basin of the Mackenzie River System.
19 Although the Yukon Coastal plain, along the Yukon
20 coastal plain the proposed route crosses numerous
21 drainages which flow out of the British Mountains
22 northward to the Beaufort Sea. The Mackenzie River
23 system drains an area of approximately 700,000 square
24 miles. The two largest tributaries to the Mackenzie
25 in terms of drainage are the Liard and Great Bear
26 Rivers, draining 107,000 and 60,000 square miles
27 respectively. The Liard River doubles the flow of the
28 Mackenzie at its confluence near Fort Simpson, and
29 markedly affects spring breakup and flooding on the
30 Mackenzie. The Great Bear River, on the other hand,

Miss G. Minning
In Chief

1 has a more stable flow than the Liard, and exhibits little
2 influence on the Mackenzie River floods. The Peel
3 River, which has its origin in the Ogilvie
4 Mountains of the Yukon, join the Mackenzie downstream
5 at Point Separation. Although the drainage area of
6 the Peel is only 29,000 square miles, the maximum
7 recorded peak flow is in excess of 200,000 cubic feet
8 per second. The average discharge of the Mackenzie River
9 to the Arctic Ocean is on the order of one million cubic
10 feet per second.
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

From Wrigley northward to

North of San Sault Rapids the terrain is generally flatter. Numerous shallow lakes in this area have a moderating influence on stream flow. Stream channels are frequently frozen to the bottom in winter, and flow is small. Flooding is common in the spring due to the widespread occurrence of permafrost and the limited opportunity for infiltration. From west of Fort McPherson to the Travaillant Lake area and northward to Richards Island the pipeline crosses three major rivers: The Peel, the Mackenzie upstream of Point

Miss G. Minning
In Chief

1 Separation, and the Mackenzie at Swimming Point. No
2 other significant river crossings occur in this part
3 of the route, much of which is characterized by flat
4 or gently rolling, poorly drained terrain.

5 The streams and rivers of
6 the Yukon coast flow northward and westward across
7 the alluvial plains to the Beaufort Sea. They are
8 swift and turbulent for short periods during summer,
9 but are often frozen to the bottom in winter. Typically
10 the coastal rivers display wide, shallow, braided
11 channels, subject to rapid and intensive lateral shift-
12 ing. Channels are not well defined or persistent and
13 the valleys are in some places subject to extensive
14 icing conditions in winter.

15 Information on streamflow
16 in the vicinity of the proposed pipeline route is
17 limited largely to a few stations on the Mackenzie
18 River and its larger tributaries. Stage discharge
19 relationships for the streams and rivers of the
20 Mackenzie Valley and Yukon Coast are not generally
21 available, particularly for the smaller drainage basins.
22 To provide information on the precipitation and
23 streamflow, regimes on several of these smaller drainage
24 basins, a field data collection program has been init-
25 iated. The purpose of this program is in part to provide
26 baseline data on the characteristics of summer
27 precipitation in selected areas on the proposed pipeline
28 route which are remote from the existing meteorological
29 network maintained by Environment Canada. Field data are
30 also being obtained for the calibration and verification

Miss G. Minning
In Chief

1 Separation, and the Mackenzie at Swimming Point. No
2 other significant river crossings occur in this part
3 of the route, much of which is characterized by flat
4 or gently rolling, poorly drained terrain.

5 The streams and rivers of
6 the Yukon coast flow northward and westward across
7 the alluvial plains to the Beaufort Sea. They are
8 swift and turbulent for short periods during summer,
9 but are often frozen to the bottom in winter. Typically
10 the coastal rivers display wide, shallow, braided
11 channels, subject to rapid and intensive lateral shift-
12 ing. Channels are not well defined or persistent and
13 the valleys are in some places subject to extensive
14 icing conditions in winter.

15 Information on streamflow
16 in the vicinity of the proposed pipeline route is
17 limited largely to a few stations on the Mackenzie
18 River and its larger tributaries. Stage discharge
19 relationships for the streams and rivers of the
20 Mackenzie Valley and Yukon Coast are not generally
21 available, particularly for the smaller drainage basins.
22 To provide information on the precipitation and
23 streamflow, regimes on several of these smaller drainage
24 basins, a field data collection program has been init-
25 iated. The purpose of this program is in part to provide
26 baseline data on the characteristics of summer
27 precipitation in selected areas on the proposed pipeline
28 route which are remote from the existing meteorological
29 network maintained by Environment Canada. Field data are
30 also being obtained for the calibration and verification

Miss G. Minning
In Chief

of the hydrologic models proposed for optimization of drainage and erosion control measures and river cross-section design.

On the proposed pipeline route, two areas of significant groundwater activity have been identified. Both of these areas are of particular importance from a fisheries point of view in that the major springs typically feed over-wintering areas. One of these areas is on the Yukon coastal plain and extends from the Alaska-Yukon border along the coastal plain to approximately Milepost 290. Groundwater discharge from springs in this area may be characterized as fresh to moderately fresh with observed conductivities in the range of 200 to 425 micromhos/cm. Water temperatures at the spring source are typically in the range of zero to four degrees Centigrade.

THE COMMISSIONER: Miss Minning, I take it that what you mean is that the fish over-wintering beneath the ice receive a continuing supply of water from the springs, is that what is happening?

A I think that's why it's unfrozen there, yes. I don't want to say the wrong thing, I'm not a fish person.

Q Oh, I see. Who is discussing this?

A This is Peter McCart.

Q Oh.

A He would be very angry if I said the wrong thing.

Q Well, we know how to handle

Miss G. Minning
In Chief

like that.

A The second major area of groundwater activity lies along the Franklin Mountains in the Donnelly River at Milepost 317 and the Wlake River at about Milepost 606. This area is characterized by numerous springs and seepages. Discharge from the springs is variable and the water quality varies from fresh to highly mineralized. Conductivities in excess of 3000 micromhos per second have been measured. Water temperature in major springs are variable, ranging from close to zero degrees Centigrade to 18 degrees Centigrade, measured at a spring in the vicinity of the Ochre River. Evidence indicates that this area is one of regional groundwater recharge. The main source or recharge area is probably the Mackenzie Mountains. Areas of local groundwater recharge are also prevalent.

Areas of less significant groundwater activity have also been noted on the pipeline route to the west of the Northwest Territories border. These areas, however, are of limited importance from a fisheries point of view.

Because of the implications of a failed pipeline operation on interruption of groundwater flow, Arctic Gas and Northern Engineering Co. Ltd. have initiated a field program to determine the origin and to define the nature of important springs on the pipeline route. The object -- the objective of this program is to obtain sufficient information to be able to assess quantitatively the

Miss G. Minning
In Chief

impact of pipeline operation. The program will combine drilling and geophysical exploration. Whereas the source of many of the springs and groundwater seepage zones along the Franklin Mountains is known from past investigations, or can be inferred from hydrogeochemistry, this is not true for many of the major springs on the Yukon Coastal Plain.

Climatic conditions along the proposed pipeline route vary from coastal Arctic near the Beaufort Sea to interior sub-Arctic along the Mackenzie Valley. Records of temperature and precipitation have been continuously maintained at Fort Good Hope and Fort McPherson since before the turn of the century and in the Fort Norman-Norman Wells area for about 70 years. Most other stations in the Mackenzie were established after 1940.

In recent years the meteorological network in the western part of the District of Mackenzie and coastal areas of the Beaufort Sea has been expanded to include the Dew Line stations at Shingle Point and Komakuk Beach.

The impact of the Arctic Gas project as it relates specifically to water resources is mainly on fisheries. In this regard, Arctic Gas recognizes that there are areas of concern that relate to protection of spawning grounds and over-wintering areas. The impact as it affects the water supply for settlements along the pipeline route will be negligible. The impact of chilled pipeline operation on the disruption of surface runoff and drainage in the active layer

Miss G. Minning
In Chief

1 has been discussed previously and will not be considered
2 further here.

3 Next section, which is
4 Section 2. Water use requirements. This will be
5 G.L. Williams discussing this.

6 The main water-use require-
7 ment will be during the construction phase. This will
8 include domestic requirements for construction camps,
9 for snow-making and snow road construction, for ditch
10 flooding, and pipeline testing. Water requirements for
11 operation and maintenance of the pipeline will be--
12 will in general be minimal.

13 The water requirements for
14 pipeline construction will be obtained from surface
15 sources including both lakes and streams and locally
16 from groundwater sources. The details of how the
17 water supply requirements will be met for the different
18 construction spreads are part of final design. The
19 water supply requirements and potential water sources
20 for two typical spreads has been detailed in the
21 response to question No. 52 in the Pipeline Application
22 Assessment Group's requests for supplementary informa-
23 tion.

24 A number of governmental
25 regulations and guidelines are applicable to water
26 supply development and waste disposal in the Territories
27 as well as the provinces. These have been considered
28 in the development of standards for the Arctic Gas
29 project. The applicant is confident that these
30 standards as set out below will meet or exceed those

Miss C. Fleming
In Charge

... by existing legislation and by sound
engineering and environmental practices.

1 Although water for
2 camp use will come from a variety of sources, water
3 quality after treatment will meet existing public
4 water supply standards (viz, it shall be clear,
5 sparkling and devoid of taste, odor or harmful bacteria
6 and be within specified chemical quality criteria).

7 THE COMMISSIONER: This is
8 Mr. Williams speaking.

9 A Waste water treatment
10 standards will be: a. Temporary Camps (200 man
11 day duration): Primary treatment and disposal to pits.
12 b. Site preparation and material receiving camps
13 (100 man camps with possible year round operation):
14 Secondary treatment of all water borne wastes and in-
15 cineration of other organic wastes. c. Construction
16 camps: Depending upon the activity season and
17 number of man-days of use, waste water disposal
18 from pipeline camps will receive some form of
19 "Secondary" treatment prior to disposal. "Primary" treat-
20 ment will be sufficient in the case of smaller camps.

21 Number three: Water Quantity:
22 a. For small camps (i.e. 20 men), the water requirements
23 are estimated at 100 IMP gal/cap/day. b. For camps
24 of 100 persons or more, facilities will be designed
25 for 80 IMP gal/cap/day. A 200 man module, for
26 example, would have facilities to provide 16,000 gallons
27 per day (or 11 gallons per minute average). c. Each
28 camp would be provided with storage facilities capable
29 of providing an adequate supply for emergency use.
30 d. Unless exceptional circumstances exist water will not

1 be recirculated or recycled. e. for all practical
2 purposes, disposal facilities will be designed to
3 dispose of an equal quantity of water to that provided
4 as noted in (a) and (b) above. f. All facilities will
5 be designed to cope with the peak flows inherent
6 with shift changes.

7 2.1. Water Sources and
8 Treatment. The Mackenzie River currently serves as
9 the main source of water for most communities along
10 its banks. Although water from the Mackenzie will
11 undoubtedly be used, a number of other water sources
12 will be developed. For example, airphotos and topo-
13 graphical maps of the pipeline route indicate a signi-
14 ficant number of rivers, streams and lakes that
15 are potential water sources. Each potential source will
16 be evaluated in perspective with projected water
17 requirements as to its dependability, quality, and
18 environmental significance prior to development.
19 The larger rivers, streams, and lakes can provide high
20 quality water requiring only chlorination. Many of
21 these will provide a year round supply.

22 In southern areas, however,
23 many of the lakes produce water high in organic matter
24 and iron, which may affect taste. For such areas
25 water treatment units capable of removing the iron and
26 organic matter and producing water of acceptable
27 quality will be used. The same equipment and
28 processes will be employed for camps operated during
29 summer months when many northern rivers become turbid.
30 Similarly where special problems such as high salinity

iron contents are encountered, appropriate treatment will be provided.

Water will be chlorinated and clarified, if necessary, prior to being put into the camp storage tanks. Distribution from storage tanks will be by pressure-pipe systems. Cartridge type filters with disposable cartridges will be installed on all distribution lines to act as a final treatment. Periodic testing will be done with bacterial samples submitted as required.

Waste Water Treatment and Disposal

a) For small mobile camps:

- 1) Kitchen, laundry and shower water will be discharged to the ground surface away from areas of foot traffic

II) Toilets will be minimum water use types with storage compartments. These will be emptied into pits prepared for that purpose. The location of the pits will be marked.

- b) For camps occupied on a year round basis, the basic waste water treatment component will be open lagoons with a one year retention capacity. Such units are in successful operation in many northern communities, they are economical, and require little maintenance, while producing a quality effluent.

Where lagoons are not practicable "package" mechanical treatment units capable of providing secondary treatment will be installed.

(c) For camps occupied



only the winter construction season, a package mechanical treatment unit with secondary treatment capability will be provided.

Winter construction camps are designated to be located on gravel pads. The mechanical unit will be backed up by a lagoon constructed on the edge of the gravelled area. The lagoons will be capable of containing at least 10 days of total flow with ample allowance made for ice formation. Discharge from the "backup" lagoons will, where practicable, be into swampland or heavy bush. Discharge directly into bodies of water will be avoided. Chlorination of effluents will also be avoided except where there is a possibility of contamination of a domestic water supply.

Sewage sludges resulting from the secondary treatment processes will be incinerated with the as disposed of as solid wastes.

The recommended treatment process for waste water and the one preferred by Arctic Gas is called the "physical-chemical" process. This involves precipitation of solids by chemicals with subsequent disposal of the sludge by incineration. Secondary treatment standards are met by filtration. The major advantage of this method over "biological" methods is the speed with which a plant can be put into operation and also the degree of control of the process by the operator.

2.3 Solid Waste Disposal. All organic wastes will be incinerated. Larger camps will

1 use high temperature dual chamber incinerators to
2 maintain clean air standards. Ash and non-combustibles
3 will be burned.

4 Landfill processes approved by
5 the Territorial Government will be used. Non-combus-
6 tible waste will also be collected and buried except
7 for major equipment items which will be collected in
8 central depots for subsequent recovery and recycling.

9 2.4 Water Supply for Com-
10 pressor Stations and Maintenance Camps. As maintenance
11 camps at the compressor stations are occupied on a
12 discontinuous basis large storage tanks capable of
13 providing the water supply requirements for 6 to 8 month
14 periods would be installed. The methods of filling
15 will vary from camp to camp but generally would
16 occur once or twice a year. With regard to waste
17 water disposal, each compressor station will have
18 from pipeline construction a single or dual cell
19 lagoon capable of retaining 8000 man-days of wastes. It
20 is the intent that these will be utilized to receive raw
21 sewage. With the reduced intermittent occupation
22 such lagoons will have in the order of 1 years' retention
23 capacity. The effluent from such a lagoon will meet
24 secondary treatment standards.

25 Likewise, the incinerators
26 redundant from from the pipeline construction phase
27 will be retained inservice on the compressor stations for
28 disposal of combustible wastes.

29 2.5. Hydrostatic Testing.

30 Two alternative methods of hydrostatic testing during

1 the winter are available, warm-water testing and
2 water-methanol testing.

3 Warm water testing involves the
4 heating of water to about 50°F (10 degrees C) and pumping
5 it through the test section until the temperature of
6 the water being discharged reaches a specified
7 temperature, usually about 35° - 40°F (3-5 degrees C).
8 Test sections probably would not exceed five miles in
9 length, and the amount of water used per test
10 section would be about three times the volume of the
11 test section. When water is being drawn from a
12 supply point, it is required at a rate of about 4000
13 USGPM.

14 With warm-water testing, there
15 is always the risk of freezing the test medium. In
16 addition, large water sources are required at frequent
17 intervals along the route, and water usage is high.
18 Warmwater testing is not a desirable test method in
19 permafrost regions and therefore it is not likely
20 to be used north of the 60th parallel.

21 Water-methanol testing involves
22 the mixing of water and methanol to form a solution
23 whose freezing point is less than the minimum expected
24 backfill temperature at pipeline depth. The
25 strength of the solution will vary with region, but normally
26 will not exceed 26% by volume. In the coldest region,
27 the north slope of the Yukon, a solution strength as
28 high as 29% methanol by volume may be required in
29 the worst case.
30

Miss G. Minning
In Chief

Test sections will be about three miles in length. The same solution will be moved from one test section to the next, testing all the pipe in a construction section. The solution would then either be stored in the pipe until the next construction season, and re-used, or the methanol would be separated by a distillation process and mixed with water to make a new solution at the start of next year's testing program. Water requirements for water-methanol testing would be about 1/70th of those for warmwater test program.

At the end of the second construction season, the test medium will be disposed of either by dilution to a methanol concentration of about 1% followed by direct disposal onto ice over a large watercourse such as the Mackenzie, or by distillation to remove most of the methanol. After distillation, a residue containing less than 1% methanol will require disposal.

Disposal of solutions containing about 1% methanol onto ice over a watercourse such as the Mackenzie is considered because the methanol concentration is extremely low and the oxygen required to oxidize the methanol would be a very small percentage of the available oxygen. By disposing of the solution onto ice, evaporation and sublimation would reduce the methanol content in time. In addition, the release of the solution would occur gradually as the ice melts, at a time when the river flow is high.

Wherever possible, all water

Miss G. Minning
In Chief

1 which will be used for testing will be free of silt or
2 harmful components, and will be filtered prior to use.
3 The pipe will be clean and internally coated so no harm-
4 ful components will be added during testing.

5 The use of corrosion inhibitors
6 is not currently proposed but may be required for water
7 methanol testing, especially if storage of the test
8 medium in the pipe from one season to the next is used.

9 No. 3, this section will be
10 presented by R.L. Harlan. Hydrologic considerations
11 in route location and refinement.

12 With regard to route location
13 and design of river crossings, two particular features
14 of northern rivers should be noted. Because the
15 Mackenzie River flows northward, freezeup occurs first
16 in the lower reaches and breakup occurs first in the upper
17 parts of the watershed. This gives rise to ice dams and
18 ice jams forming with a temporary upstream increase in
19 water levels and/or scouring. The effects of this
20 temporary damming on scour and on pipe security have
21 been evaluated. The second important feature of rivers
22 and streams flowing through permafrost terrain is
23 the unusually large reduction in flow during winter,
24 which in some case may be naturally reduced to zero,
25 particularly in the more northerly regions. Winter const-
26 ruction has both economic and environmental advantages
27 under these circumstances.

28 In addition to the general
29 considerations discussed above, a number of other
30 factors have been considered in route location,

Miss G. Minning
In Chief

particularly at river crossings. For instance, preference has been given to location of river crossings in straight channel reaches rather than at a river bend where lateral migration of the channel could be accelerated by pipeline construction. Those factors affecting bank erosion, namely the resistance of the bank to erosion, velocity and depth of the adjacent river flow, and the angle of attack between the banks and the approach flow, were taken into account in route location. The factors were considered in detail by the panel -- by the geotechnical panel in Phase 1 and will not be considered further by this panel.

In the route location and refinement process, an effort has been made to avoid wherever feasible, difficult river crossing situations. To illustrate this point, the difference in hydrologic characteristics of the rivers on the west side of the Mackenzie River as compared to those on the east side was a beneficial factor in the decision to locate the pipeline route on the east side. Because of the greater extent and elevation of the Mackenzie Mountains compared to the Franklins, runoff on the west bank tributaries tends to be higher than for the east bank tributaries. The mean annual 50-year floods for the Wrigley and Carcajou Rivers, for example, are 77,000 cubic feet per second and 97,000 cubic feet per second, respectively. The mean annual 50-year flood for the east side rivers varies from about 3,000 cubic feet per second to 34,000 cubic feet per second. The channels of the east bank tributaries are smaller and more stable

than their counterparts on the west side. The west side rivers are commonly braided with wide active flood plains whereas the tributaries on the east side commonly have a single channel.

assessment. Section 4.1, Water withdrawal and waste water disposal. This will be presented by P.J. McCart.

The discharge of liquid wastes
and compressor stations to
negligible environmental
of swamplands in disposal
monstrated by the example of
Hartland-Rowe, 1973, "Use
sink for receipt of sewage ef-
Social Committee, Northern
15; second publication,

Miss G. Minning
InChief

1 Hartland-Rowe, R. and P.B. Wright, 1974, "Swampland
2 for sewage effluent, final report." Environmental-
3 Social Committee, Northern Pipelines Report No. 74-4)
4 If treated effluent is to be discharged in a stream
5 or river, it will be done so only if dilution will be
6 sufficient to make any effect negligible.

7 Section 4.2, Construction
8 activities. This will be done by G.L. Williams.

9 In the short term pipeline
10 construction activities at river crossings may result
11 in increased sediment loads. Insofar as the Mackenzie
12 River and other major rivers are concerned, natural
13 sediment loads arising from bank and channel erosion dur-
14 ing spring breakup will greatly exceed those caused by
15 construction of a pipeline crossing. Moreover, the
16 sediment introduced to the lower reaches of the tributary
17 rivers from backwater effects due to ice-jamming will
18 also be greater than that caused by pipeline construction
19 across these rivers. For the crossing of the Macken-
20 zie River at Point Separation, for example, it is
21 estimated that the increase in suspended sediment load
22 at a distance of 1,000 feet downstream of the crossing
23 during dredging will be in the order of 55 ppm. At
24 a distance of 4,000 feet downstream from dredging oper-
25 ations the increase in suspended sediment load will
26 decrease to about 25 ppm by volume. These increases
27 in suspended sediment loads are regarded as negligible
28 compared to natural sediment loads in the Mackenzie
29 River. The average suspended sediment load in the
30 Mackenzie River as measured from Arctic Red River was

Miss G. Minning
In Chief

1 551.9 ppm in June 1973, decreasing to 142.2 ppm in
2 September of the same year. That's in a publication
3 by Davies, K.F., 1974, "Hydrometric data summary
4 Mackenzie River Basin, 1973." Environmental-Social Oil
5 Development Report No. 74-8.

6 Conventional techniques which
7 have been used extensively in pipeline engineering in
8 the past have been developed to avoid long-term changes
9 in the river regime. If a river crossing is not
10 properly designed, the crossing could redirect channel
11 flow to parallel the pipeline, thereby creating a new
12 channel. To minimize the chances of this happening,
13 river crossings are made at approximately right angles
14 to flow in the channel. Further to reduce the
15 possibility that lateral erosion may be induced that
16 could expose the pipe beyond the sag points
17 the crossings are made where possible at straight
18 stable reaches.

Arctic Gas does not expect borrow operations in connection with pipeline requirements to significantly alter either the regional runoff or river regimes. Gravel, for example, will not be removed from streambeds in which there is flowing water. Borrow operations, however, will be carried out on "active floodplain", that is the area of the flood plain that undergoes seasonal flooding.

Borrow operations on the

1 active flood plain will generally be conducted during
2 the summer to early winter. Wherever space permits, a
3 buffer zone will be left between the borrow operation
4 and the stream channel. In all cases, a berm will be
5 built to separate the borrow pit from any channel with
6 flowing water thus effectively avoiding increased
7 siltation in the stream at any time of the year. The
8 berm will be constructed to ensure its stability
9 during all times of the year. Breaching of the berm
10 will be carried out following the completion of
11 borrow operations to ensure that the pit will be
12 cleansed during the spring flood when silt concentrations
13 are naturally high.

14 Since any relatively small
15 increase in silt loads from the borrow pit operations
16 would occur during the spring flood, when natural silt
17 loads are highest, it is unlikely that either fish or
18 benthic invertebrate populations would be affected.
19 The borrow pit excavation will not be deeper than
20 the level of the adjacent streambed, and the
21 borrow pit floor will be regraded to ensure a positive
22 downslope gradient to the streambed so that no ponding
23 will occur. Therefore, there should be no long
24 term effects of borrow operations on aquatic habitats
25 and fish and benthos populations. Stream channels
26 will eventually form a braided pattern within the flood
27 plain, a pattern common to many streams.

28 As the depth of borrow
29 operations will be limited to the level of the adjacent
30 streambed, borrow operations should not affect

1 overwintering fish populations which may be dependent
2 on the passage of subsurface waters. Furthermore, the
3 berm should prevent any silt-laden water within the pit
4 from entering the stream because any groundwater migrating
5 through the borrow pit area will be filtered by the
6 berm material before entering the adjacent watercourse.

7 4.3 Operation and Maintenance.

8 The operation and maintenance activities as they
9 relate to the proposed Arctic Gas Pipeline have been
10 described in Phase I. These activities including
11 minor repairs and routine surveillance will
12 primarily employ aircraft for the movement of personnel
13 and light equipment. Wherever practical, maintenance
14 operations will be scheduled to correspond to those
15 times when conditions are the least sensitive to
16 environmental damage. As in the case of the impact
17 on terrain, the impact of operations and
18 maintenance on water resources will in the judgment
19 of the Applicant be minimal.

20 4.4. Impact of Pipeline 21 Operation.

22 4.4.1. Surface Waters. This
23 will be R.L. Harlan. Arctic Gas has stated its intent
24 to provide for the control of drainage and erosion on
25 the pipeline right-of-way and at river crossing
26 locations. The proposed measures will prevent the
27 introduction of unacceptable sediment loads into the
28 surface water bodies. There should, therefore, be little
29 adverse environmental effect of pipeline operation
30 on surface waters. The effect of chilled pipeline

1 operation on icing occurrence is considered in the
2 following section.

3 4.4.2 Groundwater. The
4 concerns expressed by both the Pipeline Application
5 Assessment Group and the Department of the
6 Environment task force with regard to effect of
7 chilled pipeline operation center on two main issues.
8 First of all, the interruption of subsurface flow and its
9 diversion to the ground surface in winter could
10 result in the formation of an icing with the consequent
11 interruption of the downstream water supply. Arctic
12 Gas recognizes that in some situations, maintenance
13 of the downstream water supplies is critical
14 to overwintering fish populations. Secondly, the
15 initiation of an icing in an area not normally
16 prone to icing could, under certain circumstances,
17 cause lateral deflection of spring runoff resulting in
18 accelerated channel migration and intensified erosion of
19 the banks. The possibility of this occurring,
20 however, is regarded as small. IT is noted
21 that many of the Yukon Coastal Rivers are naturally
22 subjected to severe icing conditions.

23 Within the continuous perma
24 frost zone, substantial areas of unfrozen permeable
25 materials are found only beneath those rivers and lakes
26 that do not freeze completely in winter. Within
27 these unfrozen areas, groundwater flow is controlled
28 mainly by the configuration of the groundwater table.
29 At the proposed river crossing locations, for example,
30 subsurface flow in the sub-river channel materials is

1 generally parallel to the slope of the river bed.
2 Except in those situations where aquifer thickness
3 changes significantly or there is a decrease in
4 permeability in the downstream direction, the vertical
5 component of groundwater flow is generally small.

6 It is recognized that any
7 reduction in the unfrozen cross-sectional area available
8 for groundwater flow due to the growth of a frost
9 bulb around a buried pipeline will restrict
10 subsurface water movement. this is inevitable unless
11 the permeability of the remaining unfrozen cross-
12 sectional area is increased through the use of drains
13 or by replacing the in situ materials with coarser
14 material of greater permeability. The reduction of
15 subsurface flow around the pipe will result in the
16 diversion of groundwater flow upstream of the pipeline
17 crossing. For an unconfined flow situation, subsur-
18 face flow will be diverted to the channel thereby
19 augmenting flow in the river. For an unconfined flow
20 situation, it is unlikely that a significant build-
21 up of artesian pressures could develop within the
22 groundwater system. In general, the downstream effects
23 will be limited due to the fact that the hydraulic
24 gradient and permeability of the river alluvium
25 downstream from the crossing will not be changed from its
26 natural state.

27 For most large rivers, aug-
28 mentation of flow in the channel will be small. This is
29 due to the small size of the frost bulb compared to
30 typical depths of the unfrozen alluvium at major

1 river crossing locations. As the augmentation of flow
2 over the pipe is small in relation to flow in the
3 river, the pipeline could have a negligible
4 effect on the formation of icings at the pipeline
5 crossing or on fish populations overwintering down
6 stream of the crossing.

7 In those rivers and streams
8 which freeze to the riverbed it can be shown that the
9 zone above the pipe will freeze off relatively
10 quickly,, e.g., within one or two years following startup
11 of the pipeline, unless high groundwater flow velocities
12 are sustained throughout the winter. The depth of
13 freezing below the pipe will depend upon a number
14 of factors including the extent and nature of the
15 unfrozen areas, the rate of subsurface water movement
16 in the unfrozen zone and groundwater temperatures.
17 In some situations in which the rivers freeze to the
18 bottom, permafrost occurs at a relatively shallow depth
19 due to the three dimensional effects. For instance,
20 the presence of permafrost beneath and to the sides of
21 a relatively shallow channel area provides in essence
22 massive heat sink which reduces the depth and lateral
23 extent of such unfrozen zones .

24 It is further recognized
25 that where there is a significant reduction in
26 subsurface flow, the occurrence of icings may be
27 initiated.

28 A slide presentation on
29 river icings will be made.

30 In those situations where it is

G. Manning
InChief

1 important to maintain the downstream water
2 supply, for instance to overwintering fish populations,
3 the Applicant will provide for the maintenance
4 of flow by the provision of insulated subsurface drains
5 across the pipeline right-of-way or other appropriate
6 measures. The necessity for and replacement of sub-
7 surface drainage, for example, will be determined from
8 the Applicant's geothermal analysis of each situation
9 as part of final design.

10 Where the possibility of chan-
11 nel migration due to the initiation of an icing
12 at a river crossing is anticipated, the river banks will
13 be protected by riprap or bank armour as required.
14 Where unforeseen conditions are encountered, channel
15 and bank stabilization will be provided through the
16 proposed operation and maintenance program. Riprap
17 or bank armouring will be provided as required to
18 minimize adverse environmental effects and to protect
19 the integrity of the pipeline.

20 Five, Impact of Abandonment.
21 ARctic Gas is not aware of any potential adverse effects
22 of pipeline abandonment on water resources.
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

Miss G. Minning
In Chief

During construction, vehicular emissions and dust along the route will unavoidably occur as a result of construction and aircraft activity. Small amounts of unburned hydrocarbons, oxides of nitrogen, carbon monoxide, carbon dioxide, sulphur dioxide, sulphur trioxide, water vapor and suspended particulates will be generated as a result of operation of vehicles, construction machinery, , and support facilities associated with construction activities. The emissions from such operations will have only a small effect on the general air quality. They are relatively small in magnitude, are distributed over a relatively wide area, and are transitory in nature. About 10% of the weight of all exhaust emissions will be water vapor. This may result in the formation of ice fog under very cold winter temperatures, with inversions, and where there is a light wind. Although the presence of ice fog may restrict visibility and hamper construction activities, it is not considered to be harmful to the environment. The construction phase will not have any long-term impact on air quality. In the operation phase the only compressor stations -- oh, in the operation phase, only compressor stations will be a source of potential long-term effects on the atmosphere. However, the fuel will be natural gas, which is a very clean-burning fuel, and the influence of the compressor stations on air quality will be minimal in terms of toxicity in the exhausts and the area over which there may be an effect. The quantities of turbine exhaust gases vary somewhat depending on the

Miss G. Minning
In Chief

1 ambient temperature and the load conditions of the
2 pipeline. At full load conditions when the ambient
3 temperature is 77 degrees F. the 30,000 horsepower
4 stations with refrigeration will produce approximately
5 5,315 standard cubic feet per second of exhaust gas.
6 Of this quantity. 3.9% will be water vapor, 2.1%
7 carbon dioxide, 77.5% nitrogen, and 16.5% will be oxy-
8 gen. At an ambient temperature of minus 40 degrees F.
9 the total exhaust gases will increase to approximately
10 5,690 standard cubic feet per second and the percentage
11 of each component will be slightly changed.

12 In addition to the primary
13 exhaust components listed above, small quantities of
14 nitrogen oxides, sulphur oxides, carbon monoxide, and
15 unburned hydrocarbons will be produced. The oxides of
16 nitrogen will be present in quantities ranging between
17 59 parts per million and 130 parts per million, depend-
18 ing on the type of turbine, and will consist primarily of
19 nitric oxide with a small percentage of nitrogen dioxide.
20 The nitric oxide rapidly oxidizes to nitrogen dioxide
21 in the atmosphere. The average concentration from a
22 given station will contain in the order of 105 parts
23 per million nitrogen oxides.

24 The sulphur oxides will con-
25 sist primarily of sulphur dioxide with a small percen-
26 tage of sulphur trioxide. The quantities of sulphur
27 oxides in the exhaust gases will depend directly upon
28 the quantities of sulphur in the fuel gas. Section 12
29 of the application (Tariff) specifies that the gas
30 shall contain not more than 20 grains of total sulphur

Miss G. Minning
In Chief

per 100 cubic feet. However, the producers have informed us that the gas in both the Mackenzie Delta and Prudhoe Bay contains only negligible amounts of sulphur. Assuming the maximum limit in the gas specification, the exhaust gas would have a sulphur dioxide content at approximately 6 parts per million. With less than 2 grains sulphur per 100 standard cubic feet, the sulphur content of the exhaust gas will be less than 0.6 parts per million.

Carbon monoxide in the exhaust gases is a product of an incomplete combustion. The quantity will depend largely on the efficiency of the turbine and the load conditions. At full load, the turbines are most efficient and will produce quantities of carbon monoxide ranging between 10 and 50 parts per million. At reduced loads the quantities will increase.

Unburned hydrocarbons in the exhaust gases are also a product of an incomplete combustion. They will be present only in negligible amounts.

The Federal Ambient Air Quality Objectives established under the Clean Air Act R.S.C. 1970, which were published in "Canada Gazette" on July 12, 1974, state the following limits for sulphur dioxide and carbon monoxide in the ambient air:

The maximum acceptable concentrations of sulphur dioxide are (a) 60 micrograms per cubic meter (.02 parts per million) average annually;

(b) 300 micrograms per cubic meter (.11 parts per

Miss G. Minning
In Chief

1 million) average for a 24-hour period; and
2 (c) 900 micrograms per cubic meter (.34 parts per
3 million) average for one hour.

4 The maximum desirable concentrations of sulphur dioxide
5 are stated as exactly one-half of the maximum acceptable
6 concentrations.

7 The maximum acceptable concentrations of carbon monoxide
8 are: (a) 15 milligrams per cubic meter (13 parts per
9 million) average for an 8-hour period; and

10 (b) 35 milligrams per cubic meter (30 parts per
11 million) average for a 1-hour period.

12 The maximum desirable concentrations of carbon monoxide
13 are: (a) 6 milligrams per cubic meter (5 parts per
14 million) average for an 8-hour period; and

15 (b) 15 milligrams per cubic meter (13 parts per
16 million) average for a 1-hour period.

17 The Federal Ambient Air
18 Quality Objective No. 2, which were published in the
19 "Canada Gazette" on February 12, 1975, state the follow-
20 ing limits for nitrogen dioxide in the ambient air:

21 The maximum acceptable concentrations of nitrogen
22 dioxide are: (a) 100 micrograms per cubic meter (.05
23 parts per million) average annually;

24 (b) 200 micrograms per cubic meter (.11
25 parts per million) average for a 24-hour period; and

26 (c) 400 micrograms per cubic meter (.21
27 parts per million) average for one hour.

28 The maximum desirable limits are 60 micrograms per
29 cubic meter (.03 parts per million) average annually.
30

Miss G. Minning
In Chief

1 The applicant has hired as
2 consultant Western Research & Development of Calgary
3 to make calculations to predict the ground level con-
4 centrations of nitrogen dioxide and sulphur dioxide
5 for a wide range of assumed atmospheric conditions
6 including neutral atmospheric conditions, plume
7 trapping conditions, intense inversion conditions, and
8 calm conditions. In all cases, these calculated
9 quantities are below the limits stated in the Federal
10 Ambient Air Quality Objectives for the period of
11 time in which they could occur.

12 The results of these calculations
13 for nitrogen dioxide concentrations during neutral at-
14 mospheric conditions, and intense inversion conditions
15 are shown in figures 1 and 2 which are attached. The
16 maximum calculated concentrations of nitrogen dioxide
17 during plume trapping conditions are .01 ppm at a wind
18 speed of 1 mile per hour; .05 ppm at a wind speed
19 of 5 miles per hour; and .09 ppm at a wind speed of
20 10 miles per hour. The maximum calculated concentration
21 of nitrogen dioxide during calm conditions is .13 ppm.

22 The maximum calculated concen-
23 trations of sulphur dioxide in the ambient air at
24 ground level are approximately six percent of the con-
25 centrations of nitrogen dioxide, assuming the maximum
26 specification limit of 20 grains sulphur per 100
27 standard cubic feet. This quantity of sulphur, although
28 an extreme maximum, results in calculated levels which
29 are below the limits stated in the regulations. A more
30 probable sulphur content of less than 2 grains per

Miss G. Minning
In Chief

1 100 standard cubic feet results in the ground level
2 concentrations being less than .6% of the quantities
3 shown for nitrogen dioxide.

4 The maximum calculated
5 concentrations of carbon monoxide are approximately
6 the same as the concentrations shown for nitrogen dio-
7 xide. However, the allowable limits are 40 to 60
8 times higher, and therefore the concentrations are
9 well below the allowable limits.

10 Studies on the effects of
11 sulphur dioxide on lichens which are generally considered
12 the most sensitive plants and the best indicators of
13 SO-2 pollution indicate that there might be acute
14 damage at 0.03 parts per million of sulphur dioxide,
15 some chronic change at 0.006 parts per million, and
16 no damage whatsoever at 0.002 parts per million.
17 This is in a paper by Sidey, Peter, 1975, "Discussion
18 of the Response of Lichens to Atmospheric Sulphur
19 Dioxide with Special Reference to those of the Mackenzie
20 Valley, Canada".
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

G. Minning
In Chief

1 The maximum quantity of
2 sulphur dioxide in the ambient air at ground level
3 is less than .0008 parts per million based on
4 using a fuel gas containing less than 2 grains
5 sulphur per 100 standard cubic feet. This concentra-
6 tion is well below those levels considered to be
7 harmful to lichens.

8 The applicant is continuing
9 studies on further ways to reduce in particular
10 oxides of nitrogen in the turbine exhausts. We
11 have held discussions with most of the turbine manu-
12 facturers which offer equipment for possible use on
13 our system and most manufacturer are presently
14 working on improving combustion chamber and fuel
15 nozzle design to reduce NO_x emission levels. Steam
16 or water injection reduces emission levels and has been
17 considered, but these methods are not practicable in the
18 Arctic because of the large quantities of demineralized
19 water which are required. We expect to take
20 advantage of the latest technology in combustion
21 chamber and fuel nozzle design to ensure that the
22 NO_x emission levels are as low as is practicably
23 feasible.

24 MR. CARTER: Sir, here the
25 prepared evidence omits the section on ice fog and
26 continues on the next page with the paragraph,
27 "Routine maintenance...". Following that paragraph we
28 have a new insert for ice fog and that is the last
29 page in the amendments that are inserted in the
30 report.

1 A Routine maintenance procedures
2 at the compressor stations will result in the release
3 of some natural gas. DURING the startup, during
4 normal unit shutdown for maintenance, or in the event
5 of a mainline break, quantities of natural gas will
6 be expelled to the atmosphere. The low
7 density of natural gas causes it to rise rapidly, there-
8 by making the effects of mainline breaks and ground
9 level air quality only temporary in nature.

10 Ice Fog. Ice fog is not
11 considered to be harmful to the natural environment
12 but may restrict human activities because of
13 limited visibility. For ice fog to form, large
14 quantities of water vapour along with temperatures
15 below -22°F are required. Between temperatures of
16 -22°F and -40°F an abundance of nuclei are also
17 required for the ice particles to form. Below
18 -40°F the formation of ice particles is spontaneous
19 and does not require the aid of nuclei. The quantity
20 of water vapour in the station exhaust gases will
21 probably be enough to form ice fog, provided atmos-
22 phere conditions are right. In areas where ice
23 fog is a problem, such as Fairbanks, Alaska, there
24 is an abundance of unburned hydrocarbons and particulate
25 matter in the atmosphere which originates from
26 automobile exhaust and several coal burning plants
27 in the area. With Natural gas as a turbine fuel,
28 if no other contaminants are present in the atmosphere
29 it is possible that not enough nuclei may be present
30 to form ice fog at temperatures below -40°F.

G. Minning
In Chief

1 This appears to be the case with existing compressor
2 stations in western Canada where ice fogs are not
3 common during these temperatures. At temperatures
4 below -40°F the density and thickness of the ice
5 fog layer will be dependent on the terrain and the
6 degree of stability of the atmosphere. It is possible
7 that even during temperatures below -40°F the density
8 of the ice fog will not be high enough to seriously
9 limit visibility.

10 Noise. Noise levels will be
11 intensive at times during the construction period,
12 but should result in only short term losses in the
13 environmental quality. Applicable construction worker
14 noise exposure standards will be complied with, and
15 the virtual absence of wildlife during the construction
16 period will preclude significant adverse effects on
17 them.

18 During the life of the pipeline,
19 the only important source of noise will be from the
20 compressor stations. Our calculations show that with
21 the noise data which we now have from manufacturers
22 and based on operating experience, the noise levels at
23 the station boundaries will range between 60 and 68 dBA.
24 At a distance of 1,000 feet from the station boundaries
25 these levels would reduce to between 50 and 54 dBA.
26 These levels are assuming -- are based on assuming
27 worst case conditions, i.e., flat hard surfaces around
28 the station with no absorption by the ground, minimum
29 absorption by the air and zero wind velocities.

30 In selecting criteria for

G. Minning
In Chief

1 noise limits, we have taken as a guide the Energy
2 Resources Conservation Board of the Province of
3 Alberta, which sets a daytime limit of 65 dBA and a
4 nighttime limit of 50 dBA within 10 feet of any perman-
5 ently occupied residence. In comparing the noise
6 levels of available equipment having conventional
7 silencing with the diverse requirements of personnel
8 on site, adjacent populations, and wildlife habitat,
9 we find no conflict. A general guideline has been
10 recommended by our ornithological consultant, Dr.
11 W.W.H. GUNN, that average sound levels be limited to
12 50 dBA at a distance of 1,000 feet from the compressor
13 station. The Alberta regulations require 50 dBA or less
14 within 10 feet of any permanently occupied residence.
15 The noise levels anticipated from the stations meet
16 these requirements.

17 MR. CARTER: Thank you,
18 very much. Sir, we propose to have the slide presentations
19 when the Inquiry reconvenes.

20 THE COMMISSIONER: All right,
21 well, thank you very much, Ms. Minning. The Inquiry
22 then should adjourn, should it, Mr. Goudge?

23 MR. GOUDGE: I think so, sir,
24 until a week from Monday at 1 p.m.

25 THE COMMISSIONER: All right,
26 the Inquiry is adjourned until Monday, November 3rd,
27 at 1 p.m.

28 (PROCEEDINGS ADJOURNED)
29
30

347
M835
Vol. 78

Mackenzie Valley pipeline inquiry:
Vol. 78 23 October 1975

ent

*— H. J. McIntosh —
— Peter Lee —*

347
M835
Vol 78



A1
1
74M21

MACKENZIE VALLEY PIPELINE INQUIRY

Government
Publications

IN THE MATTER OF APPLICATIONS BY EACH OF

- (a) CANADIAN ARCTIC GAS PIPELINE LIMITED FOR A RIGHT-OF-WAY THAT MIGHT BE GRANTED ACROSS CROWN LANDS WITHIN THE YUKON TERRITORY AND THE NORTHWEST TERRITORIES, and
 - (b) FOOTHILLS PIPE LINES LTD. FOR A RIGHT-OF-WAY THAT MIGHT BE GRANTED ACROSS CROWN LANDS WITHIN THE NORTHWEST TERRITORIES,
- FOR THE PURPOSE OF A PROPOSED MACKENZIE VALLEY PIPELINE

and

IN THE MATTER OF THE SOCIAL, ENVIRONMENTAL AND ECONOMIC IMPACT REGIONALLY OF THE CONSTRUCTION, OPERATION AND SUBSEQUENT ABANDONMENT OF THE ABOVE PROPOSED PIPELINE

(Before the Honourable Mr. Justice Berger, Commissioner)

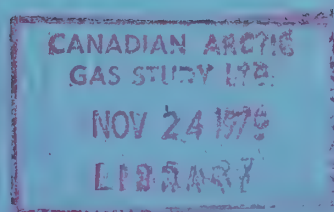
Yellowknife, N.W.T.

November 3, 1975.

PROCEEDINGS AT INQUIRY

Volume 79

347
M835
Vol. 79



I N D E X

WITNESSES FOR CANADIAN ARCTIC GAS PIPELINE LIMITED:

Donald DABBS	
Peter J. McCART	11675
J.I. CLARK	
R.L. HARLAN	
R.A. HEMSTOCK	
C.M. KOSKIMAKI	
G.V. MINNING,	
Guy Leslie WILLIAMS	11679
- In Chief	
- Cross-Exam by Mr. Hollingworth	11743

EXHIBITS:

301	Resume & List of Reports, Donald Dabbs & Peter J. McCart	11678
302	Chapter 6, Station Emissions, N.E.S. Report	11678
303	View graphs	11686

347
M835
Vol. 79

CANADIAN ARCTIC
GAS STUDY LTD.
NOV 24 1975
LIBRARY

Dabbs & McCart
In Chief

Yellowknife, N.W.T.

November 3, 1975.

(PROCEEDINGS RESUMED PURSUANT TO ADJOURNMENT)

THE COMMISSIONER: Well, we'll call the hearing to order, and I think we're ready to proceed. Mr. Marshall?

MR. MARSHALL: Thank you, sir.

Sir, the direct evidence of the panel dealing with the impact on the physical environment has been read into the record. Two of the panel members have not previously given evidence. They have now been sworn and I'd like to introduce them and review their qualifications. The first is Mr. Donald Dabbs. Mr. Dabbs is the gentleman sitting here third from the end of the table.

DONALD DABBS, and
PETER J. McCART, sworn:

DIRECT EXAMINATION BY MR. MARSHALL:

Q Mr. Dabbs, to review briefly your qualifications, your present position is as manager of the Environmental Division of R.M. Hardy & Associates Limited. Is that correct?

WITNESS DABBS: Yes.

Q And your education was received at the University of Saskatchewan where you received a B.Sc. in Agriculture in 1968, and an M. Sc. in Plant Ecology in 1971.

A Right.

Q You're a member of the

Dabbs & McCart
In Chief

Alberta Institute of Agrologists, and the Canadian Society of Environmental Biologists, and the International Association of Ecology.

A Right.

Q Your professional experience, beginning with the summer work, the summers of 1961, '62, and '64, you were with the Canadian Department of Agriculture Research Stations at Scott, Saskatchewan and Fort Vermilion, Alberta, in 1965 and '66 in the summers you were at the Saskatchewan River Delta with Canadian Wildlife Service, the work entailing vegetation sampling and air photo interpretation for the development of the landscape classification and vegetation mapping?

A Yes sir.

Q In the summer of 1967 you were with the Department of Biology, University of Saskatchewan, involved in field research program on inter and intra-specific competition between several groups of animals, together with a habitat classification. Is that correct?

A That's correct.

Q Then in 1968 to '70 you did contract research in plant ecology, Peace, Athabasca Delta for the Canadian Wildlife Service?

A That's so, yes.

Q And you were responsible for the development of remote sensing techniques and the application of these techniques to the study of vegetation response and successional changes resulting from the alteration of the hydrologic regime of the region.

Dabbs & McCart
In Chief

Then, sir, beginning in 1971 you became involved with the Arctic Gas project through Williams Brothers ?

A That's correct, yes.

Q And beginning in 1971 you were senior plant ecologist with Williams Brothers. In 1972 you moved over to Northern Engineering Services on its establishment, and then in January of 1974 you transferred to Canadian Arctic Gas Study Limited as environmental researcher. Beginning in December, 1974 you moved to R.M. Hardy & Associates as Environmental Division?

A That's correct, yes.

Q And you have to your credit some six publications that are listed in Appendix "A" to your resume, which you will file, sir, and I understand as well numerous consulting reports, in addition to those. Is that so?

A Yes sir.

Q Your area of responsibility initially involved co-ordinating all of the ecological studies, then in March, 1972, you were the senior plant ecologist responsible for the design and execution of the vegetation and re-vegetation studies of the project.

A That's right.

Q Thank you, Mr. Dabbs.

The other member of the panel who has not previously testified, sir, is Dr. Peter J. McCart. Dr. McCart is the gentleman sitting on Mr. Hemstock's left.

Dabbs & McCart
In Chief

Dr. McCart, you're the president of Aquatic Environments Limited, and your education was received as follows, sir: You have a B.A. in zoology from the University of Oregon in 1958; and M. Sc. in zoology from the Institute of Fisheries, U.B.C., 1963; and Ph. D. in zoology from the same university in 1970?

WITNESS McCART: That's correct.

Q Your professional experience, beginning in 1963, is as follows: 1963 to 1968 you were a Fisheries scientist with the Fisheries Research Board of Canada, Nanaimo, British Columbia. From 1968 to 1971 you were a special lecturer and assistant professor of the Department of Biology, University of Saskatchewan, Regina?

A That's right.

Q 1969 to '72, consultant to the Alyeska Pipeline Service Company, Bellevue, Washington, our studies involved work on the life history of fresh water fish in the Sag River drainage in the Alaska North Slope, an assessment of potential impact of the construction and operation of the proposed Trans-Alaska Pipeline?

A That's right.

Q 1971 to '73 you were an assistant professor, Department of Biology, University of Calgary, and from 1973 to the present you've been president of Aquatic Environments Limited?

A That's correct.

Q Since 1971 you've been consultant to Northern Engineering Services Limited

Dabbs & McCart
In Chief

1 on the Arctic Gas project.

2 You have to your credit, sir,
the publications that are listed in the appendix to
your resume, which I'll file with Miss Hutchinson,
There are some 14 publications, and your area of
responsibility, Dr. McCart, has been with respect to
the design, supervision, and reporting of studies on
fish populations along the alternate gas pipeline routes
in Canada north of the 60th Parallel and in Alaska.

A Yes.

11 (RESUME & LIST OF REPORTS OF D. DABBS & P.J.

12 MCCART MARKED EXHIBIT 301)

13 (CHAPTER 6, STATION EMISSIONS, N.E.S. REPORT,

14 MARKED EXHIBIT 302)

Koskimaki,
Clark, Harlan, Hemstock,
Dabbs, McCart, Minning, Williams
In Chief

1 MR. MARSHALL: Thank you, Dr.
2 McCart. Dr. Harlan has a couple of corrections, to
3 the evidence that was read in the first is at pages
4 3 and 4 and I would ask Dr. Harlan to correct the
5 record and unfortunately we do not have the trans-
6 script for the last day of hearings. I have asked Dr.
7 Harlan if he would make the reference to the prepared
8 direct evidence and then read in the correct wording
9 for the particular passage where the error occurs.
10 Dr. Harlan, could you give me some help?

11 WITNESS HARLAN: Yes, first of all,
12 in reference to page, or the last paragraph on page 3 in
13 the first five lines of page 4, I would like to read
14 it as it should be corrected. Okay, the corrections
15 relate primarily to the figures given with regard to
16 acreage.

17 "In addition to the land
18 required for the pipeline right-of-way, approximately
19 784 acres or 1.2 square miles within the Yukon and
20 the North West Territories will be required for
21 construction of compressor stations. 971 acres or
22 1.5 square miles for the construction of 66.5 miles of
23 permanent project roads, 2,430 acres or 3.8 square miles
24 for the construction of airstrips and 185 acres or
25 0.3 square miles for wharfs. In total, the estimated
26 permanent land requirement is 21,947 acres or approxi-
27 mately 34 square miles within the Yukon and North West
28 Territories.

29 Q Thank you. The next
30 correction was on page 9 of the prepared evidence. The

Williams,
Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
In Chief

1 correction is on the first line of the last paragraph
2 under "Impact on Resources". The sentence should read
3 the project will require use of 34 rather than 32 square
4 miles for the life of the project and the temporary
5 use of 8.5 square miles of land in the Territories.

6 It is just the one number that
7 is changed.

8 A Yes, sir, and the next
9 correction was on page 46, lines 2 and 3. Line 46.
10 On the second line, on page 46, the words "wherever
11 space permits" should be deleted.

12 Q So the sentence then
13 should begin "A buffer zone will be left between the
14 burrough operation and the stream channel."?

15 A That is correct.

16 Q Thank you, Dr. Harlan.
17 Mr. Hemstock has some more recent data pertaining to
18 H₂S, Mr. Commissioner, and I have asked him if he would
19 just make a brief statement that would amplify the
20 evidence that would--that is contained in the prepared
21 direct evidence.

22 Mr. Hemstock, could you
23 relate the recent information that has been obtained
24 pertaining to this subject?

25 WITNESS HEMSTOCK: Yes, sir.

26 We have been touch with the three major producers in
27 the Mackenzie Delta Area, and with the ARCO Exxon
28 in Prudhoe Bay. The, in short, the three producers in
29 the Delta Area have found virtually no sulphur in any
30 of the gas samples which have been analyzed. In the

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning
Williams
In Chief

1 case of Imperial, this is with instrumentation or
2 detection limits down to 0003% by weight. The producers
3 ARCO and Exxon, from Prudhoe Bay say that they have
4 based their information on the analysis for two major
5 sulphur compounds which are H₂S and mercaptans
6 and while they have not run a total sulphur test at this
7 time, they estimate that the total H--the total sulphur
8 of the gas from the Saddlerochit formation should not
9 exceed two grains of total sulphur per hundred standard
10 cubic feet of gas.

11 Q Thank you, Mr. Hemstock.

12 Sir, I am having that information put on the record as
13 it affects the section of the evidence that pertains
14 to air quality. There is one other matter that pertains
15 to air quality. Mr. Koskimaki was asked earlier if he
16 could provide copies of a report, or at least a section
17 of the report that dealt with station emissions.

18 A:

19 That document is now available, sir. We have three
20 copies; if others require copies for purposes of
21 preparation of their case we would happy to have them
22 run off, but, I have those available now if any of the
23 Council would wish to pick them up. We can make
24 it an exhibit if it--if that would be best, sir.

25 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, maybe
26 we should make it an exhibit.

27 MR. MARSHALL: Fine, sir. It
28 is Chapter 6, Station Emissions. It is a report of
29 Northern Engineering Services. It is taken from the
30 Preliminary Station Design Mechanical Electrical and
Local Control.

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning, Williams
In Chief

1 MR. MARSHALL: I think, sir,
2 those who look after the few preliminary matters.

3 There were three slide presen-
4 tations that the panel wished to make in connection
5 with the evidence that Miss Minning read in when the
6 Inquiry was last in session and I'd like now to proceed
7 to those, if I could before cross-examination.

8
9 J.I. CLARK,
10 R.L. HARLAN,
11 R.A. HEMSTOCK,
12 C.M. KOSKIMAKI,
13 G.V. MINNING, and
14 G.L. WILLIAMS, resumed:

15 MR. MARSHALL: The first slide
16 presentation will be made by Miss Minning pertaining to
17 borrow.

18 WITNESS MINNING: The major
19 uses of borrow material are for construction of per-
20 manent access roads, compressor stations, air strips,
21 and other major pipeline facilities. Lesser quantities
22 of borrow are used in drainage and erosion control,
23 slope stabilization and surcharge berm. May I have the
24 first view graph?

25 Approximately 30 million cubic
26 yards of borrow will be needed for construction of the
27 pipeline and its facilities in Canada north of 60.
28 This view graph shows a breakdown of requirements for
29 major facilities along the coastal and interior routes.
30 Sub-totals indicate quantities in Canada north of 60,
31 No. 9 indicates quantities for the Alaskan part of the
32 route.

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning
Williams - In Chief

Q Just if I can stop you
there. This first view graph shows the information in
Canada you have seven different segments. You have the
borrow requirements for each of those segments, and then
a sub-total for Canada north of 60 on the 8th line.
Is that correct?

A That's correct.

Q Then you've added in the
Prudhoe Bay to the Alaska-Yukon border as item No. 9,
and then given a total for the whole system to the 60th
Parallel.

A That's correct.

Q I see, and you've given it
for both the coastal route and the interior route, either
the Marsh Fork or the Canning River options.

A That's correct. As I
said earlier, the sub-totals in Canada north of 60 do
not include requirements for granular backfill, bedding
and padding, swamp and river wastes. These totals are
approximately seven million cubic yards for the prime
route.

THE COMMISSIONER: Excuse me.
Do you mind just repeating that and going a shade
slower? You said that we see these totals here, 23
million 513 thousand cubic yards of borrow in Canada
north of 60 along the Arctic Gas prime route. What
came after that, 7 million cubic --

A Yes, 7 million cubic
yards are required for granular backfill, bedding and
padding, swamp wastes and river wastes. So the total

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams - In Chief

for Canada north of 60 is approximately 30 million cubic yards.

Q So that the 23 million represents infra-structure in a sense and the 7 million represents the actual material used in the trench?

A That's correct.

Quantity estimates are an on-going process as pre-construction planning progresses. Estimates for facilities originally based on air photo interpretation and as field evidence becomes more common, these things can change. Permafrost, relief, topography, surface drainage and construction methods are all considered when making the original estimates. The amount of land used in borrow sites numbers 3,928 acres or 6.1 square miles. This represents approximately 40 acres per borrow site, for 98 sites in Canada north of 60. Borrow sites will have some of their area used --

Q Excuse me, 98 sites --

A In Canada north of 60.

MR. MARSHALL: That's shown on this first slide.

A Right.

Q Sir, you see,

"Sub-total Canada north of 60"
under the prime route they have 98 sites.

A Borrow sites are located in surficial deposits in bedrock exposures which occur along the pipeline route. Most favorable deposits are sand and gravel of glacial outwash, and alluvial deposits,

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams - In C hief

Competent bedrock, like limestone can also provide required borrow material when crushed. Finer grained sediments in morainal, glacial, lacustrine or glacial lake and windblown deposits are less desirable than sand and gravel, but can be used for construction purposes.

View graph 2 shows a breakdown of the types of borrow sites found on the prime route with the east of Fort Simpson re-alignment. Wherever possible, borrow sites are located no more than eight miles from the pipeline right-of-way. Preferred and alternative borrow site locations appear on the project strip maps. Section 13-A-2 of the application. Field investigations of both the reconnaissance and detailed nature will be done for each borrow site that is chosen for construction. A reconnaissance program for borrow sites was undertaken from July 12, 1975 to September 21, 1975. This program included geological environmental, geophysical and engineering input; 181 sites were visited on the reconnaissance. Of these 181 sites 106 were studied in detail. There were approximately 10 drill holes and 230 test pits. Emphasis for this summer program was to cover areas which were outside of the Diane granular materials inventory, to cover areas where shortages of granular material exist according to the past inventory work and to investigate areas shown as borrow sites on the project strip maps.

Q If I could just stop you for a minute, Miss Minning. You've got the various types of borrow pits. The first one there is bedrock,

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams - In Chief

1 and I guess we all understand that. Alluvial flood
2 plains, fans and terraces, "alluvial" means rivers,
3 does it?

4 A That's correct.

5 Q And then glacial fluvial
6 would you explain that?

7 A Those are rivers associated
8 with glaciation, river deposits.

9 Q And glacial lacustrine is
10 the next.

11 A Those are glacial lake
12 deposits.

13 Q And the next is morainal.

14 A Those are the deposits
15 associated with the ice, the glacial ice directly.

16 Q And I take it you will
17 be showing us some slides of these major deposits.

18 A That is correct.

19 Q Sorry to interrupt.

20 A Slide No. 1.

21 THE COMMISSIONER: Those view
22 graphs should be marked as exhibits.

23 MR. MARSHALL: Yes sir, I have
24 copies, and I'll give them to Miss Hutchinson now.

25 (VIEW GRAPHS MARKED EXHIBIT 303)

26 A I emphasize that these
27 slides show typical deposits. Some of these deposits
28 have been chosen as borrow sites; some have not been
29 chosen as borrow sites, but have been chosen as good
30 slides to show typical features.

In Chief

A That's right, the terrace.

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning
Williams - In Chief

1 Q Yes.

2 A The environmental assess-
3 ment of each area would decide whether the terrace
4 deposit or the river deposit would be the best to take.
5 These are just examples. The original borrow site in
6 this area was shown in the active flood plain.

7 Q Now, I take it that the
8 term, "active flood plain" as you're using it, is not the
9 same as Dr. Peter Lewis was using it. You're using it
10 in the N.E.S. definition of the active flood plain, are
11 you? Not the fossil --

12 A Yes.

13 Q O.K.

14 THE COMMISSIONER: I thought
15 you said a minute ago it was not the intention of Arctic
16 Gas to take gravel from the active flood plain.

17 A From the active river
18 channels on the flood plain.

19 Q Oh, I see.

20 A Those are active channels
21 those are active flood plains, and then there is fossil
22 flood plains.

23 Q Right, so here, just taking
24 the last slide and this one together, on the last one
25 you had an active flood plain and a fossil flood plain?

26 A That's right.

27 Q And you would be taking
28 gravel from both, but not from the active river channel.

29 A That's correct.

30 Q Now here you have this

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock
Koskimaki, McCart, Manning
Williams - In Chief

1 terrace.

2 A It's possible that this
3 could be a borrow site too.

4 Q Yes.
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning
Williams
In Chief

Q When you said there were
30 feet of gravel there, you meant the active flood
plain, not the Terrace.

A No, I mean in the Terrace.
It is 30 feet thick there.

Q That is what I thought
you meant. Now, the flood plain itself there, you
would be taking gravel from that flood plain as well?

A Possibly. We have
shown a borrow site in this flood plain in our
preliminary work.

I have some slides along
Alyeska that show development of an active flood plain,
so possibly that will, that will come later in the
talk.

This is another Terrace
deposit. This is in the vicinity of Fort Simpson.
This can be classified as either a glacial, fluvial, or
alluvial terrace. No one really knows the age. It has
gravel with a silt cover. Glacial fluvial deposits
account for the largest number of borrow sites shown
on the project strip maps. This particular slide is
on the Yukon Coastal Plain east of the Flood Plains
sites that were just shown.

Q Perhaps Dr. Clark, you
could outline the deposit there.

A In this deposit, there
is at least 15 feet of gravel. This was also drilled
in our summer program.

This is another outwash

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning
Williams--In Chief

1 deposit in the vicinity of Yaya lakes on the east side
2 of the Mackenzie Delta.

3 Q Dr. Clark, again could
4 you outline where the deposit is?

5 A This is
6 a typical esker in the area east of Inuvik and south of
7 Sitidgi Lake. The slide was looking northwest. The
8 esker is 50 feet high. At present, this esker is
9 presently not a borrow site on our project strip maps
10 but it was a good example of an esker.

11 This is another example
12 of an esker in Fort Good Hope area.

13 Q The esker is composed
14 largely of gravel materials?

15 A Yes. Gravel and sand.

16 Q And they have been
17 deposited, if I understand the evidence that has been given
18 previously, by glaciers?

19 A By rivers associated with
20 glaciers. This is a knobby outwash deposit near Rapid
21 Creek on the Yukon Coastal Plain. This site is 8 miles
22 southeast of the confluence of the Bow River. These
23 are came deposits, better known as came deposits
24 which is hummocky outwash. They are approximately
25 50 feet high. These also were drilled and tested
26 this summer. The ridge area is in the foreground also
27 consists of outwash, gravel and sand. This is in the
28 vicinity of Lost Reindeer Lake. This represents an
29 outwash plain deposit in the area south of Fort Simpson
30 near Mile 240 on the Mackenzie Highway. In this parti-

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning
Williams--In Chief

1 cular deposit there is about 50 feet of gravel over
2 bedrock. This is fine gravel with very little sand or
3 silt. This is a close-up of the pit. This is also
4 a gravel pit in an outwash deposit along the
5 Mackenzie Highway. There is at least 15 feet of gravel
6 there. This is a close-up of the material in that
7 particular pit.

8 Bedrock can also provide
9 granular--a source for granular material. This particu-
10 lar slide shows tertiary sands and gravel which are
11 very poorly consolidated. This is in the area near the
12 Parsons Lake Repeater Station.

13 This is another bedrock
14 exposure. This particular exposure is not a borrow
15 site at the present. This sort of material could be
16 of used if it were close to the pipeline, as it is in
17 some places. This is in the Ramparts Plateau,
18 particular slide.

19 This is also an example
20 of bedrock and bedrock talis that could provide borrow.
21 This particular location is not a borrow site at present,
22 but some borrow sites were located in the same type of
23 rock north and south of here. That is near Oscar Creek.

24 THE COMMISSIONER: Where was
25 that?

26 A Near Oscar Creek.

27 Q Where is that?

28 A In the area near Norman
29 Wells.

30 MR. PAYLY: Mr. Commissioner,

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning
Williams--In Chief

1 we have heard about studies that do not appear to be
2 listed in any of Miss Minning's appendices to her
3 evidence. I gather that they were completed last month
4 and I am assuming that we will have the benefit of
5 those and of Miss Minning again if that should be
6 necessary after the studies are produced. They appear
7 to go into areas that she does not list as
8 having studied previous to this summer.

9 MR. MARSHALL: I take it, Mr.
10 Bayly, you are referring to the joint program under-
11 taken this summer.

12 MR. BAYLY: That is correct,
13 Mr. Commissioner That is what I was referring to and Miss
14 Minning's material discloses that she had studied in the
15 Fort Simpson area and south and I gathered this summer
16 she also studied at least some of her studies were along
17 the Yukon Coastal Plain and in the Delta and Parsons
18 Lake Area.

19 MR. MARSHALL: Miss Minning
20 advises me, Mr. Bayly, that studies were carried out
21 along the length of the pipeline this summer and the
22 report is in preparation. Hopefully, it will be avail-
23 able in January.

24 THE COMMISSIONER: Well, when that
25 report is available it may be necessary to recall Miss
26 Minning. I do not think that presents a problem.

27 MR. MARSHALL: It does not, sir

28 WITNESS MINNING: The view
29 graphs that follow will show some typical development
30 plans. These view graphs are taken from view graphs

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning
Williams--In Chief

1 which appear in a report that was filed here called
2 "Pipeline Related Borrow Studies." These are typical
3 development plans. It does not mean that these plans
4 will apply to each site. Each site will be done by
5 itself, but these show the four major types of deposit.

6 This first view graph
7 shows both active and fossil flood plain borrow pit
8 development. The upper left-hand corner shows the
9 plan view of the borrow area. Area 1 is in the active
10 flood plain. Area 2 is in the fossil flood plain. The
11 cross-sections on the right side of the drawing show
12 cross-sections done across lines which appear on the
13 plan view. At this particular site 615,000 cubic
14 yards will be needed, approximately 45 acres is involved--
15 25 acres in the active flood plain, 20 acres in the
16 fossil flood plain. This does not mean that this would
17 be what happen at this site. We just wanted to show
18 an example of how it could be done using both flood
19 plains in the same drawing. There are comments on the
20 drawings which pertain to vegetation. I guess you can
21 read that for yourself. I will make some general
22 comments that apply to borrow pit development in both
23 active and fossil flood plain. Before any borrow site
24 is developed in an active flood plain it will be
25 investigated from an environmental point of view. This
26 would include all aspects--fish, mammals, birds. If
27 a site is in an active flood plain, it must be investi-
28 gated from a hydrology point of view to make sure that
29 the hydrology of the river is not affected and the
30 integrity of the pipeline is not affected. Active

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning
Williams--In Chief

1 flood plain slides will be at least 2,000 feet from the
2 pipeline.

3 MR. MARSHALL: I take it in this
4 sketch that is before us that a pipeline is off in the
5 left-hand corner and if I can read it right, it is
6 perhaps not as well focused as it might be. Dr. Clark,
7 could you point out where the pipeline is and then the
8 sites are some distance off to the right from where
9 the pipeline is.

10 A Yes, there are access
11 roads which appear on that plan too. There is a
12 creek in there too. The borrow would be removed from
13 an active flood plain site prior to freeze-up and
14 stock piled in windrows for recovery during winter.
15 I will show an example of this sort of thing that was
16 done in the Alyeska Pipeline.

17 THE COMMISSIONER: Excuse me. I
18 just did not catch that. What were you going to do in
19 stacking what up in windrows?

20 A The gravel from--if an
21 active flood plain site were developed--gravel from the
22 flood plain site would be stock piled in windrows which
23 are long piles of gravel so that they could be used
24 during construction in the winter.

25 MR. MARSHALL: One of the
26 slides that is coming, sir, shows this sort of operation
27 that was undertaken by Alyeska.

28 THE COMMISSIONER: I am sorry.
29 Maybe it is because we have been away for a week but
30 I am missing something. What is the significance?

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning
Williams--In Chief

1 You are removing gravel from the active flood plain and
2 piling it up in windrows for use in the winter time.

3
4 A That is correct.

5 that THE COMMISSIONER: If it is--will
6 you be doing with the other sites as well?

7 A No, no, this is for flood
8 plains, the gravel will be wet when it is in the flood
9 plains. It will have some water in it. In the winter
10 we have--

11 Q Will it be wet in the
12 spring?

13 A Yes.

14 Q And you want it to dry
15 out. Is that right?

16 A It dries out better in
17 the piles.
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams - In Chief

THE COMMISSIONER: O.K., I understand.

A Clearing, there's very little clear on an active flood plain, but overburden removal, if there is overburden present, will be similar to that shown in upland borrow sources, and I will discuss that in a moment.

Fossil flood plain development will be governed by the water and ice content in the fossil flood plain deposit.

MR. MARSHALL: Q Now on this diagram that is before us, the fossil flood plain is area No. 2, is it?

A That's right, it's higher than the active flood plain. It can, because it is higher, it may have more ice in it. It's not under the river or lower areas.

Buffer zone, 300 feet of undisturbed vegetation ground will be placed between an active and fossil flood plain, if a fossil flood plain is developed. Fossil flood plains will be excavated in winter to minimize environmental damage. Blasting may be required in fossil flood plains if they are very frozen. Assessment must be done prior to blasting to ensure that it's done at the proper time from the fish, bird, mammal, point of view.

In both active and fossil flood plain sites, passage of equipment will be limited so that siltation will not occur in the streams and channels. Temporary stream crossings will be installed

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams - In Chief

and removed before breakup where completion of borrow operations.

This slide shows development of an outwash deposit. This particular one is near Oscar Creek Gap near Milepoint 365.9 on the pipeline. This particular site , 485,000 cubic yards/^{of}borrow is needed. 31 acres will be involved. This particular site is vegetated with spruce, aspen and birch, and has one foot of deep topsoil, has some commercial timber, and is a good moose habitat. Any development would have to consider this moose habitat.

This pit will be developed sequentially, as will all the land borrow sites. In other words, the clearing of soil and timber will take place in stages and each stage, each cleared site will be used for stockpiling materials that have been removed. In this particular area, too, care must be taken that siltation doesn't affect Oscar Creek.

Next, a typical esker deposit in the way it would be developed. It also, like the upland borrow sites shown previously, will be excavated in stages. These particular site requirements were 244,000 cubic yards.

Q Just to see if I follow correctly, starting on the left-hand side, you show the esker as a finger or projection.

A That is correct.

Q And then you're showing stage 1 of development at the tip of the esker and the later stages of development you work back to the deposit,

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams - In Chief

A That is correct.

THE COMMISSIONER: Excuse me,
you were here when Dr. Roed gave evidence the week
before last, I think, and Dr. -- the two gentlemen that
discussed the east of the Franklin route and the edge of
the Shield route, do you remember those? Remember that
argument about how long the ridges were?

A Yes.

Q Well, I take it that
among other things they were talking about eskers, were
they?

A They were talking about
drumlins.

Q About what?

A Drumlins.

Q Yes.

A And flutes.

Q That's right. How long,
without getting into that sort of thing, how long are
these eskers?

A They vary in length.
This particular esker is quite long, it's over five
miles long.

Q Yes.

A Some eskers, most of the
eskers are much smaller than that.

Q And that's my impression
too, from looking at the country from the air. What
-- well this one, this five-mile esker, how big a chunk
out of it would you take then to get your X quantity of

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams - In Chief

cubic yards?

A Approximately eight acres.

WITNESS CHAIRS: This scale

is the scale

is wrong.
WITNESS CHAIRS: This scale

there are corrected scales, I think this particular one
was wrong.

MR. MARSHALL: Q Your require-
ment you show on the slide is 244,000 cubic yards?

A That's correct.

Q And then the item I says
you need 8 acres for the

A To solve that,
that's right.

Q -- borrow pits.

A That's right, because
eskers are high, it's not often necessary to make
as big an excavation. All upland borrow sources,
this includes outwash and eskers, and glacial- fluvial
terraces, will be examined from an environm ental
viewpoint. Buffer zones will be set up between any of
these upland borrow sources and rivers. Drainage and
erosion control measures will be followed in development
of borrow pits. Site plans, which are shown on
typical drawings, will also be followed in the field.
Timber will be harvested and stockpiled according to
government regulations. Slash will be burned according
to government regulations, and also according to fire
safety. Development in most upland borrow sources
will be done in stages. Gravel faces that are left

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams - In Chief

un -- and not revegetated, will have a final slope of two horizontal to one vertical, or the natural angle of repose gravel. Where re-vegetated, slopes will be three horizontal to one vertical. In fine-grained material, which might be found in some sites along with the good material, vertical cuts will be left to restore by slumping.

Any vegetation, mineral soil, will be replaced in the pit and spread evenly, then be re-seeded with grass where required, and erosion -- and drainage/erosion control measures will be followed and surficial drainage patterns will also be followed.

Most upland borrow sources will be developed in winter months to ensure environmental -- the best time environmentally. If concrete aggregate is to be produced, stilling ponds will be provided in pits where concrete aggregate is produced

Next is a bedrock quarry at pipeline Milepoint 489. Quarry is then limestone or dolemite, and involves approximately eight acres, 315,000 cubic yards of material. There is very little vegetation although the artist shows a few trees here and there. Usually in these bedrock sites there isn't that much vegetation. As with the upland borrow, a buffer zone will be constructed between water courses and quarries. Drainage and erosion control measures will be followed within quarries. Timber removal, vegetation and soil stockpile will be followed in the same manner as in upland borrow sites. Where possible, fractured bedrock, which is often the upper layer on bedrock,

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams - In Chief

1 will be used as a source of borrow so that blasting is
2 -- the need for blasting is decreased.

3 Bedrock quarries will be mined
4 by benches. You can see these on the artist's plan, so
5 that several faces can be worked at the same time.
6 Blasting will be done based on the type of rock, the
7 joint pattern in the rock, field conditions, by environ-
8 mental conditions. Each site will have to be looked at
9 before a decision as to how to blast the site is made.

10 The bottom quarry will be
11 sloped to approximately 1%. If, that is if the site is
12 above ground level. If the site is below ground level
13 a pond will be allowed to form in the quarry. Spoil
14 piles will be smoothed out in the bottom of the pits
15 and quarries. Seeding and planting will be done, if
16 required. Stilling basins will be required if the
17 quarry bedrock is to be used in concrete aggregate.

18 Construction schedule is very
19 important in the development of pits or quarries.
20 Quarries will not be developed at a time when raptors
21 are present. Upland borrow sites will generally be
22 developed in winter. Flood plain sites will generally
23 be developed in winter if they are fossil flood plain
24 sites; and in the fall if they are active flood plain
25 sites.

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams - In Chief

1 This is an active flood
2 plain site on the Alyeska Pipeline. Those ridges of
3 material are windrows.

4 Q Just to help get us orien-
5 ted, there is a dark line running horizontally at the
6 top quarter of the slide, above that, Dr. Clark, on
7 the other side. Is that one side of the river, one
8 edge of the river channel, or what is that?

9 A That's one edge of the
10 river.

11 Q And where would the othe
12 edge of the active river channel be, Dr. Clark?

13 And those four mounds are
14 windrows of gravel, are they?

15 A That is correct. This
16 particular pit has been made probably deeper than some
17 pits would be made, and as a result they have water
18 in the pit itself.

19 Q That's the sort of white-

20 A Yes.

21 Q -- bluey-white area in
22 between the four or five vertical strips.

23 A Right.

24 Q And the active channel of
25 the river would be above that, would it? And what is
26 in the foreground, Ms. Minning?

27 A In the foreground is
28 -- I'm told this is a subsidiary channel. I didn't
29 see this particular site, of the river itself, and a
30 road has been built through this channel.

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams - In Chief

1 area on the Sagavanirtok River, and as far as I know
2 there is no spawning of any significance in this area.
3 The gravels are relatively clean, so that moving through
4 there with a bulldozer would not create a major sedi-
5 mentation problem to either the fish populations or
6 to penthic vertebrates. However, if it were
7 a rather siltier substrate we might have problems
8 with the downstream movement of sediments into spawn-
9 ing areas if it were the appropriate time of year. We
10 would prefer that this not be done. If it has to be
11 done, we would like to be in a position to make recom-
12 mendations as to how it might be done with minimal
13 damage.

14 Q If I understand correctly,
15 the slide that's being shown now shows a channel for
16 the river that is a newly created channel that was made
17 by a bulldozer. They simply put a blade through the
18 gravel and created a new channel for the river.
19 That's what creates the little berms on either side.
20 The slides previously shown, the channel had not been
21 disturbed, if I understand it correctly. Simply a
22 berm had been created separating the channel from the
23 area where the borrow was being taken.

24 A That's correct. That
25 is the method that we would prefer.

26 Q Could you comment on
27 that method a little more fully, Dr. McCart? I gather
28 you've observed this?

29 A I think there's another
30 slide coming up which shows what we would like to see

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams - In Chief

1 in the way of berm construction, and in the vicinity of
2 active channel.

3 WITNESS MINNING: I think this
4 is the slide you're referring to.

5 WITNESS McCART: This is the
6 sort of thing that we prefer. It looks as if the river
7 is coming down from the top, down towards the foreground,
8 and you'll notice that there is a berm encompassing the
9 whole area to the left that is being utilized for
10 gravel. There's no evidence that this has had any
11 effect on sedimentation in the river; we have carried
12 out a reconnaissance of gravel pits along the Alyeska
13 right-of-way and we've learned something from that
14 experience. As I say, this is an example, a very clean
15 procedure as far as gravel removal.

16 Q Do I understand correctly
17 from the slide that the natural channel of the river
18 continues off to the right-hand side of the picture?

19 A Yes, and there is a berm,
20 that dark line which surrounds this rather large gravel
21 pit here. There are windrows within the gravel pit, and
22 as I say, there's little evidence that it's had any
23 effect on sedimentation in the river proper.

24 Q Dr. McCart, from your
25 observation what is the result of such a borrow opera-
26 tion in the succeeding years after the gravel has been
27 taken?

28 A We've examined similar
29 areas, areas similar to this along the Kavik River in
30 Alaska, and it's very difficult, in fact it's impossible

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams - In Chief

1 to detect the presence of these gravel pits in the
2 flood plain itself, you can, if you look along the
3 banks, see where roads have been constructed in some
4 places, to get down. There are still gravel pads
5 remaining, but along the river bed itself there is
6 no persisting evidence of gravel removal, and shifting
7 of gravel from upstream areas, gravel which has been
8 windrowed, or roads and pads that have been constructed
9 in the active flood plain itself are levelled so that
10 really we can't detect these things after a few years,
11 after a spring flood or two has passed through the
12 area.

13 Q Perhaps you could just
14 comment on what's done on completion of the borrow
15 operation in order that the river can resume its course
16 and so on. What do -- do they leave that berm in place?

17 A Our recommendation is
18 that as much as possible, gravel removal area be level-
19 led to a level which is at or above that of the active
20 channel, and that the berm be breached so that water
21 can move through the area naturally. What we want to
22 do is avoid ponding, if possible, in these areas.

23 THE COMMISSIONER: You said
24 that the presence of the berm had not affected siltatio
25 in the river, I think you said that.

26 A What I'm saying is that
27 if you have a berm which prevents the movement of water
28 through the area during the process of removal, then
29 you do have very limited effect on a river. You may
30 have minor increases.

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams - In Chief

1 Q During the period when
2 the flood plain is active?

3 A During the period when
4 the flood plain is active.

5 Q Now that's the fear, and
6 you say the evidence so far at this site indicates that
7 it's nothing to worry about. I just want to make sure
8 I understand what you were getting at.

9 A At this particular site
10 there are other situations along the Alyeska route
11 where there was some indication of sedimentation occur-
12 ring through breaches in berms. These rivers are subject
13 to some flooding during the summer as a result of rain-
14 storms and things like this, and there can be minor
15 breaches in berms at this time of year. Now I think
16 that this is something that we would want to take into
17 account and ensure ourselves that any berm that we
18 constructed would not only retain water at the time that
19 the berm was under construction, but would be sufficient-
20 ly high to contain the water during the course of the
21 summer flood. I should point out that turbidity
22 naturally increases, of course, even during the summer
23 where floods occur as a result of rainstorms, so that the
24 additional turbidity would not be as serious as turbidity
25 which might occur during low water periods.

26 WITNESS MINNING: This is a
27 fossil flood plain borrow site. Notice the organic
28 material and mineral soil has been stripped and
29 stockpiled around the borrow site.

30 MR. MARSHALL: Again this

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams - In Chief

1 would be on the Alyeska project.

2 A That's correct. This is
3 near Happy Valley Camp.

4 Q Now the active channel
5 is above this photograph, the borrow area, and there's
6 a berm or an area separating the borrow pit from the
7 river channel?

8 A That is the spoil.

9 Q I see.

10 A This is an upland borrow
11 site. This is gravel and sand, glacial origin. Notice
12 the ponds on the right side with berms to prevent
13 siltation into the creek, that's on the right side of
14 the photo?

15 THE COMMISSIONER: Where's the
16 creek?

17 A There's no water in it
18 right now. It could carry water at certain times of
19 the year. Stilling basins.

20 MR. MARSHALL: There's snow
21 cover here, I guess you can't see any water; and
22 you are saying there's a berm around the --

23 A Around the stilling basin.

24 Q -- around the stilling
25 basin to prevent siltation.

26 THE COMMISSIONER: You said
27 earlier about stilling basins, ~~the~~ ~~Minning~~, you even ~~had~~
28 ed them earlier, without the slide in front of us ~~the~~
29 significance slipped by. Do you remember what you said?

30 A Are we thinking of where

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams - In Chief

1 there is concrete aggregate stilling basins will be
2 provided? Yes, well, I think that's why I mentioned it
3 before. In other words, where --

4 WITNESS CLARK: If there was a
5 washing operation and it was necessary to clean this,
6 the water would be collected in the stilling basin.
7 That was the context where it was mentioned before.
8 In this particular instance, though, I don't believe
9 there is any washing operation here. It is strictly
10 surface run-off, and to prevent it from going directly
11 into the stream, letting any sediment allow to settle
12 here before the water enters the stream.

13 WITNESS MINNING: This is another
14 upland borrow site. It's done in terraces more or less.

15 MR. MARSHALL: Q Perhaps you
16 could show the berms there, Dr. Clark. Would you just
17 outline them? Do you think you could handle both the
18 mike and the pointer?

19 WITNESS CLARK: They obviously
20 have provided several areas here for stilling basins
21 at these different berms which were probably constructed
22 as the pit was developed. This is a basin here, one
23 here, and one here. They all intercept runoff which
24 would occur in this direction.

25 Q If you could just stay
26 with that slide, there doesn't seem to be a pit there.
27 Is that the way these deposits are developed?

28 WITNESS MINNING: This photo was
29 taken from the air and I am not certain whether that
30 is gravel or bedrock there, being taken out.

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams - In Chief

Q It looks like it's being
taken off uniformly over the whole of the area rather
than --

A I'm told that it's gravel.
This one was not taken by me.

This is a poor slide, I'm sorry
for that, but it's fairly bad weather there often. In
this particular case, they're mining talus in the bed-
rock area. Can you point to that? Can you see that?

THE COMMISSIONER: The talus
would be on the cliff, would it?

A Right. No, down at --
that's right, that's right. O.K., next. This is a
closeup of that mining operation.

MR. MARSHALL: Thank you very
much, Miss Minning.

Sir, the second slide presen-
tation is that of Mr. Dabbs pertaining to vegetation
and re-vegetation.

THE COMMISSIONER: Excuse me
a second. . Could we stop for a cup of coffee?
We'll stop for a cup of coffee, Mr. Marshall, if that'
O.K.

(PROCEEDINGS ADJOURNED FOR FEW MINUTES)

(PROCEEDINGS RESUMED PURSUANT TO ADJOURNMENT)

THE COMMISSIONER: We'll come t
order again. Mr.Scott has suggested that instead of
sitting this evening, and our usual practice would be
to sit this evening, that we should carry on until 6:30
and not come back until 9 in the morning. That's fine

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams - In Chief

1 with me, and we'll do that unless there's some great
2 objection.

3 MR. MARSHALL: That's fine with
4 us, sir.

5 I think Mr. Dabbs is now
6 ready to proceed with some slides.

7 THE COMMISSIONER: Fine, Mr.
8 Dabbs. We're all looking forward to your slides.

9 WITNESS DABBS: Well, I might
10 just say a few words before we get into the slides.
11 The testimony which was filed has appended to it as
12 Appendix "C", a report by Dr. Younkin of my staff,
13 entitled:

14 "Preliminary Pipeline Revegetation Specifications
15 for Areas North of 60 Degrees."

16 There's just a couple of points I want to draw to
17 the attention of everyone here.

18 Q I'm sorry, Mr. Dabbs.
19 That's Appendix "C" -- and just, oh yes, all right.

20 A One of the things that
21 this report has done in Table 1 is drawn together in
22 the first tabular form, briefly, the results of all of
23 the people that have been involved in this field of
24 re-vegetation research over the past seven years, both
25 in Alaska and --

26 Q Excuse me, where is Table
27 1 in that appendix, on what page?

28 A It follows page 3, of the
29 appendix.

30 Q Right.

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams - In Chief

1 A O.K. I'm often asked
2 whether or not we'd be the only people working on this
3 type of research, and what the findings have been in
4 Alaska or by other researchers in Canada, and I did
5 want to draw this table to your attention, sir, as it
6 summarizes work over the past seven years in -- on the
7 North Slope of Alaska, mostly in the Prudhoe Bay area,
8 and at several locations in Northern Canada, and
9 western, Northern Canada. For your own information,
10 the ARCO listing, this is the ARCO Chemical of Fairbanks,
11 Alaska, and we're associated with those people in the
12 early years of the Northwest project in developing
13 the plans for the re-vegetation experimental work at
14 the Sans Sault test site. They are no longer in this
15 type of work. Mitchell et al, Dr. Mitchell is a profes-
16 sor of Agronomy, University of Alaska, and we worked
17 very closely with Dr. Mitchell over the past several
18 years, and in fact Arctic Gas has sponsored a fair
19 portion of his research in Alaska for three years.

20 The last four locations
21 then, I'm sure you're very familiar with all the names,
22 give a quick and easy-to-understand summation of the
23 results of work done in the Tuktoyaktuk area, Caribou
24 Hills, Inuvik, and Sans Sault and Norman Wells area.
25 I will show a few slides of the San Sault area in a
26 few minutes. Table 2 follows page 11 in this appendix,
27 and I wanted to clarify just a couple of points. This
28 does represent the change from the table and specifica-
29 tions which were provided in the application. I think
30 the most important and the fundamental change to this

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams - In Chief

1 table, although we may be talking different varieties
2 than we were two years ago, is the heading,

3 "Erodability rating."

4 The importance here now is that these specifications
5 are queued entirely to the work the geotechnical
6 engineers of Northern Engineering who have been
7 developing the erodability rating. Our first
8 attempt at specifications related to
9 to soil moisture conditions. Soil moisture condi-
10 tions are only one of many factors that have to be
11 taken into consideration when determining the
12 potential erosion in any location. That, I believe,
13 is the important change from our first set of speci-
14 fications. One unfortunate selection of words, is
15 called "sod replacement", I believe this leads people
16 astray to think of sodding in the sense of their front
17 lawn, and I'll show a few slides in a minute to show
18 that it is not sodding in that same sense.

19 Now perhaps the slides.

20 MR. SCOTT: Mr. Commissioner,
21 I'm sorry to interrupt, but this all refers, as I under-
22 stand it, to Appendix "C", which is attached to the
23 transcription of evidence. That has not been red into
24 the record. I'm not suggesting it should be, sir. I
25 wonder if Mr. Marshall could mark a copy of Appendix
26 "C" as an exhibit and tell us whether that is --
27 represents the latest position of Arctic Gas on these
28 problems, because I am advised that it differs in some
29 material parts from what has been set out in the
30

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams - In Chief

1 application.

2 MR. MARSHALL: Mr. Scott, I
3 agree it would be a good idea to enter the document
4 -- the report in question as an exhibit, and I'll provide
5 a copy to Miss Hutchinson.
6

7 With respect to whether or not
8 it does represent the latest developments pertaining to
9 re-vegetation, I think perhaps Mr. Dabbs ought to answer
10 that.
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

represent the latest thoughts and it is dated this fall. It is, as I pointed out in Table 1, a summation of all the research available to us and revegetation work in the Mackenzie Valley, Northern Yukon and Alaska and consequently they set a specifications and the basis for arriving at those are our latest thoughts on this matter.

It is a report entitled "Preliminary Pipeline Re-vegetation Specifications for Areas North of 60°", Northern Engineering Services Co. Ltd., September, 1975.

WITNESS DABBS: Yes, it does.

WITNESS DABBS: I was attempting to point out the most important fundamental change from these specifications that were in the application to the current set of specifications and that was initially the seed mix combinations were specified in accordance with soil moisture status--dryness versus wet.

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemsto
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams--In Chief

1 They are now tied to the drainage or the erosion
2 estimation, calculations determined by the geotechnic
3 engineers. The erodibility rating then is informatio
4 that is provided to us by the geotechnical engineers.
5

6 MR. HOLLINGWORTH: Thank you.

7 A The important point is
8 the integration of revegetation and the physical
9 drainage and erosion control plans.
10

11 MR. MARSHALL: Perhaps, Mr.
12 Dabbs, you could now go on with your slides.

13 A I believe you have seen
14 a couple of these slides earlier. Les Williams gave
15 you a slide show of the San Sault test site but I
16 want to show a couple again to make the point on
17 revegetation. The pipeline was installed in the winter
18 of '70-'71. It lies directly under these frames here.
19 The fellow in the picture is seeding plants with a
20 hand-operated cyclone seeder. This is bare mineral
21 soil. The black area is organic soil stripped and
22 set to the side there.

23 Q When was this first slide
24 taken?

25 A The date here was the
26 spring following construction of the test site. The
27 precise date was June 19, 1971. The point of the next
28 picture then is to show the changes. This is the
29 same test section, the picture previously was taken
30 from this stand of Black Spruce on the
31 hill here. This was taken two months later on August
20, 1971 showing the 20 different plots that were

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams--In Chief

1 established over this buried 500-foot section of pipe,
2 all of which have been discussed in full in Volume 2
3 of the biological report series.

4 Q Would each plot have a
5 different seed mix?

6 A 18 of the plots have a
7 different variety or species and they are in pure
8 stands. Only the two end control plots were mixes at
9 the time. The intent here was to determine the
10 performance of the varieties individually at this
11 latitude previous to the work here and the work esta-
12 blished at Norman Wells and in the Inuvik area. Even
13 the performance of individual varieties was unknown.

14 Q And this was taken about
15 two months after the first plot.

16 A Two months after the
17 test section was seeded, yes.

18 This is the same test
19 section with the elevated section behind wrapped in
20 insulation now, but it is the same test section in a
21 plot of the Reed canarygrass in the spring of 1972,
22 June of '72. The idea of this picture was to show the
23 amount of top biomass of litters we referred to that
24 has accumulated in one growing season. The interest
25 here is firstly the primary objective of a revegetation
26 program is erosion--surface alluvial erosion control.
27 Secondly, it is one of assisting the re-invasion by
28 native species in the development of a stable actual
29 plant community and perhaps third would be to assist
30 in the restoration of the thermal regime, certainly

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams--In Chief

revegetation is not going to restore permafrost by itself, but it has a significant influence on the soil temperature and one of the features that controls that is the amount of top materials, the litter accumulation that each variety or species puts down.

We have found for instance that some species grow so rapidly in the first year there is such a heavy accumulation of litter as you see it here that they are unable to survive under their own top growth and unable to produce growth the second and succeeding years. In this case, in Reed canarygrass you can see the new sprouts coming and this particular species is very successful in both providing a thick organic insulative cover as well as continuing to grow itself through its own organic cover.

Q Now this slide, as I understand it, shows the situation the spring following seeding and so there has been one season of growth?

A That is correct. This is the first of the--the spring of the second growing season.

Q This is a picture of another test section. Of course, there are four buried test sections at San Sault. And this is August of the second growing season, and we see here a number of features where there is shallow surface moisture accumulated, very rapid invasion and colonization, mostly Carex aquatilis, Senecio, Juncus. A number of aquatic native aquatic plants, will immediately or within two years establish and within three years dominate in

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams--In Chief

areas like this one in the foreground where we have
a couple inches of water standing.

Q Just to see if I understand
you correctly. The three species that you mentioned and
I will not try to repeat them because I did not catch
them, were not originally seeded there.

A No, that is quite right.
This was bare or stripped back. These species have
established and quickly flourished here including the
grasses along here which were not seeded along the
roadway either.

Q Those three species are
native to that area, aren't they?

A Oh yes. They are common
to this area. Of course, the Carex which I mentioned
is very common all the way across.

THE COMMISSIONER:

Yes. Do you know the
spelling of each of those for us for the reporters
are taking it down and each one as you come to them
if you do not mind.

A I think you have me there.
How about if I write them out for the reporters. Is
that acceptable?

Q Yes, certainly. The
point that Mr. Marshall was making, I take it, was that
those three species, you did not reseed that area.

A That is the point and
those three are only those that are obvious in that
particular slide in the tables in the report in the
Volume 2 of the Biological Report Series in the report

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock
Joskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams--In Chief

areas like this one in the foreground where we have
a couple inches of water standing.

Q Just to see if I understand
you correctly. The three species that you mentioned and
I will not try to repeat them because I did not catch
them, were not originally seeded there.

A No, that is quite right.
This was bare or stripped back. These species have
established and quickly flourished here including the
grasses along here which were not seeded along the
roadway either.

Q Those three species are
native to that area, aren't they?

A Oh yes. They are common
in this area. Of course, the *Carex* which I mentioned
is very common all the way across.

THE COMMISSIONER:

Yes. Do you know the
spelling of each of those for us for the reporters
are taking it down and each one as you come to them
if you do not mind.

A I think you have me there.
Now about if I write them out for the reporters. Is
that acceptable?

Q Yes, certainly. The
point that Mr. Marshall was making, I take it, was that
those three species, you did not seed that area.

A That is the point and
those three are only those that are obvious in that
particular slide in the tables in the report in the
Volume 2 of the Biological Report Series in the report

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams--In Chief

1 of Younkin and Friesen which is a progress report on
2 revegetation which has been filed, I believed. Cer-
3 tainly it is available and subsequent sampling at Sans
4 Sault and all the test sites have looked very
5 closely at the rate and character of invasion by
6 native species into these plots as we, in selecting
7 grasses for seeding, we would not use a variety that
8 continued to grow so densely as to exclude natives.

9 MR. MARSHALL

Q Just going back to that

10 previous slide, do I understand that you had seeded
11 with non-native varieties at Sans Sault? And the
12 varieties which were seeded on the test plots here are
13 often commonly referred to as agrinomic varieties,
14 while they are varieties of species, they are agrinomic.
15 It is a term that is commonly used and often broadly
16 used to refer to any grass species that have been
17 selected through selective plant breeding programs for
18 agricultural or agrinomic utilization. They are,
19 those that succeed in the Mackenzie Valley are almost
20 without exception and there is one exception, they are
21 almost without exception selections made from species
22 which are native to the flora of the North West
23 Territories or the Yukon. For the purposes of explanation
24 here, a variety is a subsection of a species
25 species
26 /encompasses a broad range of genetic types. A variety is
27 then a selection within that. And the grasses that
28 were seeded here or the ones that still remain are
29 all those that are genetically related or in fact
30 selections of native species from the northern temperate
areas.

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams - In Chief

Q But there has been in the second growing season evidence of three native species that had not been seeded as part of the re-vegetation re-establishing themselves.

A There's evidence in the reports I mentioned of in excess of 20 species re-establishing themselves.

In the appendix to my testimony, Appendix "C" we were just discussing, we-- and in the application -- we discussed briefly the implementation of the seeding, just how we would attempt to go about seeding the right-of-way, borrow sites, and haul roads, etc. and to this point in time we have discussed the use of aerial application of seed and fertilizer because it has been the intent all along to seed the right-of-way in the spring following construction. There is then no longer a snow road, we have no longer any ground access for the use of wheeled vehicles for seeding either with a hydro-seeder, as was used in Alaska along the Alyeska route, or with seed drills and so forth. This slide is one of a helicopter and bucket, in this particular case spreading fertilizer; in the foreground is the pad, which has been constructed for an oil drilling rig in the outer Mackenzie Delta, precise location, I could give you the rig number, if that means anything.

Q Do I understand correctly that in your re-vegetation trials you've used as test-sites sites that previously were the location of drilling activity in oil or gas exploration activities.

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams - In Chief

A What we have done since

(1) testing further the varieties of species and seed combinations in a great diversity of conditions throughout the general Mackenzie Delta area, as well as it has provided us with considerable experience seeding disturbances of this type in remote locations, the problems of logistics, the aircraft, getting the right seed and fertilizer on site at a distance of 50 to 100 miles from Inuvik, for instance. To date we have expanding our experience from the test sites to a total of 21 rig sites covering a total of 120 acres of land area from sites in the Peel Plateau in the Mackenzie Delta proper, the Caribou Hills, and I'll show in a minute some sites in the Parsons Lake area.

I think that's enough for that slide. The intent is just to show the seeding.

This particular site is one near the Trail River on the Peel Plateau, which was taken in August of this year. It was seeded in early

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Hoskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams - In Chief

1 June of this year.

2 Q This had been a rig site?

3 A This had been a rig site
4 as well, yes. It had been seeded with a helicopter and
5 bucket, and fertilized as shown in the previous slide.
6 The importance of some of this work has been to provide
7 us with test sites in areas that previously had not
8 -- we had not been able to examine in the same manner
9 as the Norman Wells and the Sarns Sault test sites, we
10 were down relatively close to the river. We wanted to
11 know just what the performance of these varieties would
12 be at elevated exposed sites as there would be along the
13 lower foothills of the Richardsons and part of the
14 Peel Plateau, we -- the route touches on ^{near} Fort McPherson.
15 This is one example, one of those 21 sites.

16 I'd like also to mention that
17 the seeding of rig sites started three years ago, so
18 we have built up a number of sites of varying ages.
19 This is a shot of a site near Parsons Lake May 28th of
20 this year. As you can see, the lakes are just opening
21 up. The snow had really just receded from this site.
22 It had been cleaned up and abandoned.

23 The next slide, please, is the
24 same site then, August 20th, 1975, as well. / ^{Q:} Now this
25 had been re-vegetated using the techniques shown in
26 the slide with a helicopter and bucket.

27 A That's quite right, yes.
28 The intent of the slide is simply to show a couple
29 examples of before and after within one growing season,
30 and as you can see, on these well-drained -- here's the

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams - In Chief

1 pointer here -- well-drained pads which have a consider-
2 able quantity of gravel in them through here, there is
3 relatively little ground cover to the establishment
4 of grasses. If the gravel content is too high or it
5 is too well drained, you get very little growth of
6 grass; but in those cases also you're dealing with
7 non-erodable soils or soils in a situation that are
8 not easily eroded, as on the flanks here where the
9 moisture conditions are better, and would be subject
10 to erosion, you get considerably more growth of
11 grass.

12 This slide was taken June 2nd,
13 and it's another one back near the Caribou River on
14 the Peel Plateau, and the next slide shows that same
15 site on August 22nd of thisyear. In this particular
16 case you can see the grass that has established is in
17 the foreground at least, and is part of the site. It's name,
18 timothy, which is included in the revised set of
19 specifications.

20 Q Were this slide and the
21 previous one taken during the same year?

22 A Yes, they were. The pre-
23 vious one was June 2nd of thisyear. This is August 22nd,
24 I believe, of again this year.

25 Before I get onto that next
26 slide, I would like to point out also in the last chap-
27 ter or last section of Appendix "C", we have now
28 recommended that most if not all, most of the seed and
29 fertilizer be applied in the wintertime, as a last
30 operation following right-of-way cleanup. We established

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams - In Chief

1 some plots near Tuk last winter, winter of '74-'75, on
2 sites that had been prepared by tearing them up with
3 a ripper tooth on a cat, and they were seeded in the
4 dead of winter, and we were able to get equally good
5 growth of grass from the winter seeding.

6 The idea of aerial seeding
7 with helicopters, however, is not replaced by this.
8 We're simply speaking in that appendix of applying most
9 of the seed and fertilizer in the wintertime as we have
10 much closer control over the placement of seed, but
11 more important than that, a closer control over the
12 combination in a seed mix. With an aerial applica-
13 tion you face a situation where you simply cannot change
14 the seed mix every hundred yards or so because you're ap-
15 plying it in one sweep with an aircraft, either helicopter
16 or a fixed wing, and consequently you have to provide
17 a greater diversity of a species in that mix because
18 you're dealing with a broad diversity of conditions.
19 With the ground base seeding, the variety combination
20 in any seed mix can be easily controlled, it can be
21 changed every ten feet if you want to. There would be
22 no point to that, but it could be that closely con-
23 trolled. That would be followed in the spring then
24 with just a light dressing of an aerial application
25 on the areas that would require it, in conjunction
26 with the hand operations implementing the special
27 erosion controls on slopes and approaches to streams.

28 Q Do I understand correctly
29 Mr. Dabbs, there has been a development then in your
30 plans as to when the re-seeding would be done? At the

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams - In Chief

1 time the application was filed you were intending that
2 the seeding would be done through use of helicopters
3 and aircraft, and you're now proposing that much of the
4 seeding would be done in the winter.

5 A At the time that the
6 application was prepared, we simply didn't have the
7 evidence to support my thoughts, which date back many
8 years, that a winter-base operation would be a very
9 beneficial undertaking, and we now have that evidence
10 to support my thoughts on this matter.

11 Now, this diagram comes from
12 the application, Section 13-A-6, simply a cross-
13 sectional view of the right-of-way. The important
14 point here is that it shows that the tundra material,
15 surface material which would be stripped from that
16 ditch line, would be set aside separate from the spoil
17 mound to be placed back over that spoil mound when it's
18 put in on top of the pipe. This concept was first
19 developed or first conceived in a program I initiated
20 near the Firth River in the spring of 1972.

21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

Clark, Daphs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams - In Chief

Q Now do I take it that you consider that this simulates what you envision could happen during construction with the tundra being stripped and then put back in a pile over the ditch mound?

A This is the best simulation of the idea that I could find.

Q Without yourself getting out and ripping up the tundra.

A Without myself taking equipment out on the coast. We have this past winter, only two weeks ago undertaken what I would consider a much more scientific approach to this, and established plots near Tuk where the tundra material was peeled back with a dozer blade in three different locations representing three different tundra community types, and placed back. But this was exploratory in nature and it was my first indication that the concept was perhaps workable.

The next slide then shows that same area, late August, 1974. Here is the plot of red fescue that was seeded, and in amongst it is all the cotton grass which is re-rooted and continued to grow. There is a section in Volume II of the Biological Report series, that show a couple of pictures of this test area, spring and late summer of 1972 showing the root development of the grass. This material was not in any way placed upright, if you wish, by hand. Consequently some of it doesn't re-establish; but most in the order of 60 to 70% of all

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams - In Chief

1 this cotton grass tussock re-rooted and continued to
2 grow. Many other species were obvious in there also
3 that continued to grow, including the low Arctic willow.
4 The test that has been established at Puk will be
5 of more value in terms of quantitative data. This, I
6 think, simply illustrates the concept and this is what
7 I mentioned was an unfortunate selection of terms in
8 that spec sheet when we referred to it as "sod
9 replacement" because it is not sodding, preferably the
10 material would be broken up into chunks about the size
11 of a cottongrass tussock, or slightly larger, and it
12 would be peeled off from the ditch line itself, set
13 aside, and placed back over the backfill crown. So
14 obviously some materials that come from a seven or
15 eight-foot ditch line is not going to cover a 12 or
16 15-foot backfill mound entirely, and that's one reason
17 why I would not want it sodded in an intact piece. I
18 would prefer to have the material spread over in order
19 to provide the plants for establishment over the entire
20 route.

21 One other point, I believe this
22 has a real benefit to it, is that caribou, of course,
23 at the time this picture was taken probably migrated
24 back and forth across here at least six times over three
25 years, and numerous tracks were obvious. But by
26 this combination of natives and seeding, it obviously
27 reduces the attractiveness of this to caribou
28 because we have not experienced the same problems that
29 pier plots at Prudhoe Bay have had where the caribou
30 simply descend and eat them bare. I believe this then

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams - In Chief

would aid

1 in at least reducing the attractiveness of the right-
2 of-way to caribou.

3 One point before we move on from
4 this, tundra replacement, stripping and replacement is
5 intended only as a supplement to seeding. Seeding is
6 a basic re-vegetation technique. This would be a
7 supplement to that.

8 Just one last slide then,
9 we mention one technique for providing additional plant
10 cover on slopes, particularly in approaches to streams
11 and rivers where the material is available, and that is
12 the planting of shrub cuttings, these willows, the
13 cutting as you can see was about that long. This was
14 new growth. Those were planted in the spring. This
15 picture, I believe, was 1972, and this picture was
16 taken the end of August. This was one growing season
17 anyway, that amount of new growth. On cuttings that
18 were not treated with hormones in any way, simply hand
19 cut and placed in the ground, they root and continue
20 to grow, thus providing or re-establishing the ^{native} willow
21 cover on slopes which aids further erosion control.

22 Q That scale shown is in
23 tenths of feet, is it?

24 A Yes, it is.

25 Q Thank you, Mr. Dabbs.

26 THE COMMISSIONER: The scale is
27 shown in tenths of feet?

28 MR. MARSHALL:

29 I'm told it's an engineer's
30 notebook, and the one to six shown there are tenths of
feet.

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams - In Chief

It's half-way

attempt to go metric, I think.

Sir, Dr. Harlan has prepared
a slide presentation for icing, and perhaps we could
move onto that.

THE COMMISSIONER: Fine.

WITNESS HARLAN: The term
"icing" is used to denote several common and very
wide-spread phenomena which are characteristic of many
cold regions. Its meaning, therefore, depends mainly
on the context in which it is used. In its most
common usage, the term "icing" is applied to a mass
of surface ice formed during the winter by successive
freezing of sheets of water that seep from the ground
from a river or from a spring. The equivalent terms for
"icing" in German, that is aufeis, and in Russian,
naled.

MR. MARSHALL: Perhaps you could
spell those.

A Aufeis is A-U-F-E-I-S.
The term naled, N-A-L-E-D. O.K., these terms
are also in common usage in North America. These terms,
however, have the connotation of being more restrictive
than icing. For example, many North American workers
consider aufeis to only include river icings, whereas
icing per se includes both river icing and ground
icing. The distinction between these will become more
evident as we go on.

Icings formed by the freezing
of ground water discharge and also water forced to

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams - In Chief

1 developed within a period of 24 hours, causing distur-
2 bance to snow cover across the stream bed.

3 MR. MARSHALL: Q What happened
4 there?

5 A Now this one was initiated
6 by a moose. This is the best I could determine. He
7 crossed over the stream bed, broke up the continuity
8 of the snow cover, and the insulating value, and forced
9 the water to the surface due to freezing. The develop-
10 ment of this progresses backwards, or up-slope.

11 River icings, on the other hand,
12 formed by the freezing of overflow water which seeps
13 under the river ice cover. A river icing is fed by
14 water emanating from the river itself, or from the
15 pervious alluvium of the river bed. The occurrence
16 of this type of icing is common throughout most cold
17 regions, particularly in areas where there is any kind
18 of relief. Icings of this type can cover extensive
19 areas, as shown by the next slide.

20 This slide shows an icing
21 developed on Joe Creek, which is a major tributary
22 of the Firth River. I believe some of the icings in
23 this area will extend up to about 15 miles in length.
24 Joe Creek and the icing illustrated are fed by a
group of springs about a quarter of a mile east of the
Yukon-Alaska border. Discharge from these springs
is sufficient to maintain an open water lead in winter
of about two miles long. The temperature of the dis-
charge from these springs is about four degrees
centigrade, which will give you some indication of the



Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams - In Chief

volume of water involved.

Remnants of the larger icings, particularly in mountainous areas such as the British Mountains, persist throughout the summer months into the next winter. The persistence of aufeis is illustrated by the next slide.

Shown also is the aufeis field on Joe Creek, where as this particular photograph was taken in early summer, it does serve to illustrate the persistence of the ice aufeis fields throughout the summer months. The thickness of an aufeis deposit can be three, four, or even more times greater than the thickness of the ice cover that would normally form on deep lakes and on rivers. The great thickness of ice that can be accumulated over a single winter season is illustrated in the next slide, which shows an icing on the Satarochette River in Alaska. For obvious reasons the development of large icings or aufeis deposits is associated with areas of significant ground water activity, and with streams fed by some of the larger lakes.

On the proposed Arctic Gas Pipeline route, two areas of significant ground water activity have been identified. Both of these areas are characterized by the widespread occurrence of springs, open water leads in winter, and the occurrence of numerous and often extensive icings.

Q What's an open water

is an open water breach

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams - In Chief

1 in the river over the winter. We'll have a slide of
2 several of these. The first of these areas is situated
3 along the flanks of the Norman Range of the Franklin
4 Mountains between the Donnelly River at about Milepost
5 317 and the Willowlake River at Milepost 606. Springs
6 in this area vary from fresh to very highly mineralized.
7 Electrical conductivity in excess of 300 micromoles
8 per centimeter have been measured. These very high
9 electrical conductivities and the high degree of mineral
10 ization would suggest that these springs are in an
11 area of regional ground water discharge. For these
12 springs the source of the water is most probably to the
13 west in the Franklin Mountains, that is to the west
14 side of the Mackenzie River.
15

16 Water temperatures at the mouth
17 of the springs are also variable, ranging from close to
18 zero degrees Centigrade to a high of 18 degrees Centigrade,
19 measured at a spring in the vicinity of the Ochre River.
20 The occurrence of icings in this area, although wide-
21 spread, is less extensive than along the Arctic coastal
22 plain, which is the second major area of significant
23 ground water activity. Icings along the flanks of
24 the Norman Range are in general confined to the river
25 valleys in which they occur, as illustrated by the next
26 slide.

27 This slide shows an icing on
28 the Donnelly River, the Donnelly River being east of
29 San Sault Rapids.

30 The next slide shows a similar
type of icing on Prohibition Creek.

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams - In Chief

1 In general, potential problems
2 due to icing occurrence and due to chilled pipeline
3 operation are less severe along the Franklin Mountains
4 than along the Arctic Coast. This is due in part to
5 warmer environment and the confined nature of icing
6 occurrence.

7 The second area of significant
8 ground water activity and also the most important
9 environmentally extend eastward along the Alaskan and
10 Yukon coastal plains to the vicinity of Shingle Point
11 at about Milepost 290. Within this general area,
12 particularly within the mountainous areas to the south
13 of the proposed pipeline route, several major springs
14 have been identified by Northern Engineering Services
15 and its consultants. The discharge from these springs
16 is typically fresh to moderately fresh, with temperatures
17 in the range of zero to four degrees Centigrade.

18 The next slide shows one of
19 these springs. This one being the spring on the Canning
20 River in Alaska. This can be considered as typical of
21 many of the springs in the British Mountains.

22 On the proposed pipeline
23 route itself which traverses much of the ^{/Arctic} coastal plain,
24 the occurrence of icings is extensive and can be
25 illustrated by the next slide. May we have that, please?

26 This slide shows an icing on
27 the Firth River which extends from about three miles
28 up the pipeline crossing, across the pipeline crossing
29 to the Arctic Coast.

30 The next slide shows a view



Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams - In Chief

1 farther down. In the background is the Beaufort Sea.
2 The occurrence of springs and also icings is not
3 confined to the mountains or even hilly areas, but
4 both features occur along the distal or coastal edge
5 of the Alaskan and Yukon coastal plains.

6 The next slide shows an open
7 water lead, referred to earlier, that was observed in
8 March of 1975 in the vicinity of Craig Creek, which is
9 close to the Alaskan-Yukon border. To the west of
10 this open water lead, the surface of the icing is
11 heaved in very large amounts, such as is illustrated
12 by the next slide.

13 Water in what appeared to
14 be very substantial quantities, could be heard flowing
15 beneath the ice. At the time this photograph was
16 taken in late March, icing development was still
17 occurring in the sense that locally water was flowing
18 out over the surface and freezing. This process,
19 combined with the heaving of the ice surface, resulted
20 in some interesting, or most interesting features, as
21 is illustrated by the next slide.

22 Several of the major springs
23 and associated open water leads on the Yukon coastal
24 plain have been identified as important fish over-
25 wintering areas. One of the more important of these
26 is the spring shown in the next slide.

27 This spring is located between
28 the Firth and the Malcolm Rivers at about 1 1/2 miles
29 downstream, or to the north of the proposed pipeline
30 alignment. This spring itself supports a very large

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams - In Chief

...scaping nitrogen gas. Although the source of the
...degrees Centigrade, and the water is relatively fresh.

It is with regard to areas
...the operation of a buried pipeline...
...drilling and geophysical program in the area
...information on water and temperature conditions
...where the operation of a
...filled gas pipeline could affect the water
...for over-wintering fish populations, Arctic Gas
...alternative techniques under
...against any detrimental effect

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Roskinaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams - In Chief

insulation around the chilled pipeline to inhibit frost bulb development.

Q Dr. Harlan, if I could just stop you there, do I understand that your program would, among other things, determine what the source of the water was for the springs, such as the one as shown in this slide?

A That is correct, yes.

Q And I take it the source could either be a very deep one, which perhaps might not be affected by a pipeline, or alternatively, it could be ground water.

A It could be shallow water.

Q Shallow water.

A For example, in an unfrozen thalweg that is quite close to the surface.

Q I see.

A O.K., if that is in fact the source, then there is a possibility of freezing off this water, if appropriate measures are not taken.

Q And that gets to the measures you were just discussing.

A Yes, that's correct. I might add that both of these techniques have the greatest affability and potential effectiveness in areas with significant convective heat transport, for example that associated with significant ground water activity. In summary, I would like to emphasize that

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams - In Chief

the natural occurrence of ground spring and river icing is widespread. These icings, furthermore, can be very extensive aerially and at considerable depth. For example, three, four, or even more times greater than the thickness of ice cover that would normally form on deep lakes and on rivers under similar climatic conditions. In my judgment, the initiation of an icing per se does not constitute a detrimental impact on the environment. It is only when the initiation of an icing on the pipeline route could interrupt the downstream waters applied to overwintering fish populations, or where the initiation of an icing at a pipeline crossing could accelerate channel migration and induce bank instability problems ^{there} is a potential adverse environmental impact. Arctic Gas has previously stated its intent to deal constructively with each of these problems.

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning
Williams--In Chief

MR. MARSHALL: Thank you, Dr. Harlan. Mr. Commissioner, that concludes the presentation of the direct evidence of this panel and they are available for cross-examination.

THE COMMISSIONER: Well, let us stretch our legs for five minutes and then we will begin cross-examination. Is that all right?

MR. MARSHALL: I perhaps should point out that both Mr. Dabbs and Dr. McCart will be on the panel dealing with the living environment, sir. We are trying to keep within the rulings to separate the physical and the living environment. Their presentations on this panel have tried to restrict themselves to the physical environment and they will be back again next time around as well.

THE COMMISSIONER: Well, we will just stop for five minutes.

(PROCEEDINGS ADJOURNED FOR FIVE MINUTES)

(PROCEEDINGS RESUMED PURSUANT TO ADJOURNMENT)

MR. MARSHALL: Mr. Commissioner, Dr. Harlan had a minor correction that he would like to make to his testimony. Dr. Harlan, could you just deal with that now please?

WITNESS HARLAN: During the prepared statement, I was speaking of the phrase that are typical of the flanks of the Franklin Mountains. Many of these are fairly warm, as high as 18° and quite highly mineralized. I misspoke and said that the origin of this water was in the Franklin Mountains. It is in fact probably from the Mackenzie Mountain rather than

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning
Williams--In Chief
Cross-Exam by Hollingworth

the Franklins.

THE COMMISSIONER: This was
on the west side of the river.

THE COMMISSIONER:
A Yes. That did not ring
true at the time but I thought I must be, I did not
want to display my ignorance once again.

Well, that
is a minor correction.

MR. HOLLINGWORTH: It does
not radically affect my cross-examination.

CROSS-EXAMINATION BY MR. HOLLINGWORTH:

Q Ms. Minning, on the
second slides that you showed, you have a figure of
borrow pits from alluvial flood plains, fans and terraces
from Station MO4 to, but excluding ME13 of 5. Is that
correct?

WITNESS MINNING: That is correct.

Q And, I think I am correct
in saying that approximately from Travaillant Lake
down to Fort Simpson where the line would leave the
Mackenzie River.

A That is correct.

Q Have you pinpointed the
exact location of these borrow pits at this time.

A These borrow pits appear
in the report "Pipeline Related Borrow Studies." And
all of them are in this report and they are described
in a chart.

Q All right. Now the
berming that you have pointed out as being used by the





Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning
Williams--Cross-Exam

WITNESS DABBS: I am sorry I
did not really get the point you made.

Q You are aware of Appendix
1 and 2 plus Appendix C.

A Yes.

Q Could we just establish
that whenever I refer to an English name that I in fact
mean the genus and species that you have corresponding
on the right-hand side of your table. And I have handed
a copy of this appendix to the reporters for their use
so maybe you do not have to write as much as you earlier
promised to do.

Could you turn to Table 2
of Appendix C please Mr. Dabbs? That is just following
Page 11 of the appendix, Mr. Commissioner. Do
you have that?

A Yes, I do.

Q Now, as I understand it,
and the printing is not quite clear on the side but you
have divided the route into three zones, that is to say,
the low Arctic tundra, the forest tundra, and the boreal
forest. Is that right?

A That is correct.

Q I wonder, can you give
me the geographical cut-offs of each zones where one
turns into another?

A Okay. In the text, it
was referred to Rowe, 1972, Forest Regions of Canada, if
you want to refer to a map that actually shows you the
boundary lines. But for explanation here, realizing that

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning
Williams--Cross-Exam

this particular project does not affect or touch upon areas of any high Arctic that refers to the Arctic Islands. Low Arctic then refers to any of the Tundra regions in the north slope, Richards Island down to about the Inuvik areas just to the south and east of Inuvik and you get into an open forest lichen Woodland. That encompasses the low Arctic area.

THE COMMISSIONER: Inuvik is sort of the cut-off.

A Inuvik is very close to the boundary line between the tree line and tundra. In fact, on the hills above the town, of course, you are in tundra along the warmer environment where the river is still within the tree line.

Then the forest tundra and for clarification here it is often confused and it is a matter of definition more than anything conflicting. Forest tundra is the region of open canopy boreal forest as referred to by Rowe or forest tundra transition as referred to by Hernandez and Bliss in the F.P.B. Report if you consult the map in their little brochure on "What about the Vegetation?". I think again that shows you a very nice map of the broad regions. That then would include the area of the Mackenzie Valley from Inuvik south to Norman Wells. That area generally is referred to in Rowe's map as Lower Mackenzie Section of the boreal forest. It is that region then from Inuvik to about Norman Wells, and then of course the boreal forest is from Norman Wells south.

Q Okay now, this technique

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning
Williams--Cross-Exam

of sod replacement which I think you said was really misnamed appears by Table 2 to be used in medium and low erodibility areas in the low Arctic Tundra regions. Is that correct?

A That is correct.

Q And in no other regions along the line?

A No. At this point in time, we have no evidence to show that the technique would be useful within forested areas, and we believe it only applicable to the tundra region.

Q Why are you only using it in the medium and low erodibility zones?

A If you check under the column Seed Mats, Seed Mats Erosion Control Mats for which I really did not display or discuss before is a much more intensive technique for control of erosion on slopes greater than about 5° or 3°, I believe the report says. In those areas certainly defines high erosion potential such as approaches to rivers and streams, we would use then the seeded mats or mats plus seeding as this is an area that we must be sure of complete control of surface erosion and we would go to that more intensive technique.

Q Okay now, I understand with this sod-replacement technique that you are going to take off about 18 inches of tundra. Is that, do I understand your evidence correctly?

A 12 to 18 inches. I dare say that the thickness of organic material is variable

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning
Williams--Cross-Exam

1 with site, exposure and type of community but you are
2 correct.

3 Q I think your evidence
4 says 18 inches, doesn't it?

5 A 18-inch is fine, yes.

6 Q That is on Page 8 of
7 your direct evidence i.e. you want the reference?
8 On the second line. Are you now saying that it would
9 be 12 to 18 inches or is it 18 inches?

10 A 18 inches is fine, I think
11 in actual fact, there ^{are} areas in the Tundra where 18
12 inches would put it a little deep.

13 MR. MARSHALL: The wording
14 used was approximately the upper 18 inches.

15 Q Approximately 18 inches
16 would not go down to 12 by my definition. I just wanted
17 to clarify that. Why did you arrive at the figure of
18 18 inches or how did you arrive at the figure of 18
19 inches?

20 A It is important if you
21 wish to make the point on this 18 inches business, that
22 it is approximate, that it would be the total depth
23 from the very top of a tussock to the base of the
24 organic material that we would physically strip.

25 Q Help me along here. Do
26 You mean the top of the plant grows down to the bottom.

27 A Well, it is impossible
28 to define to a precise inch measurement because of the
29 microtopographic relief between tussocks of cotton
30 grass and the areas between the tussocks, the maximum

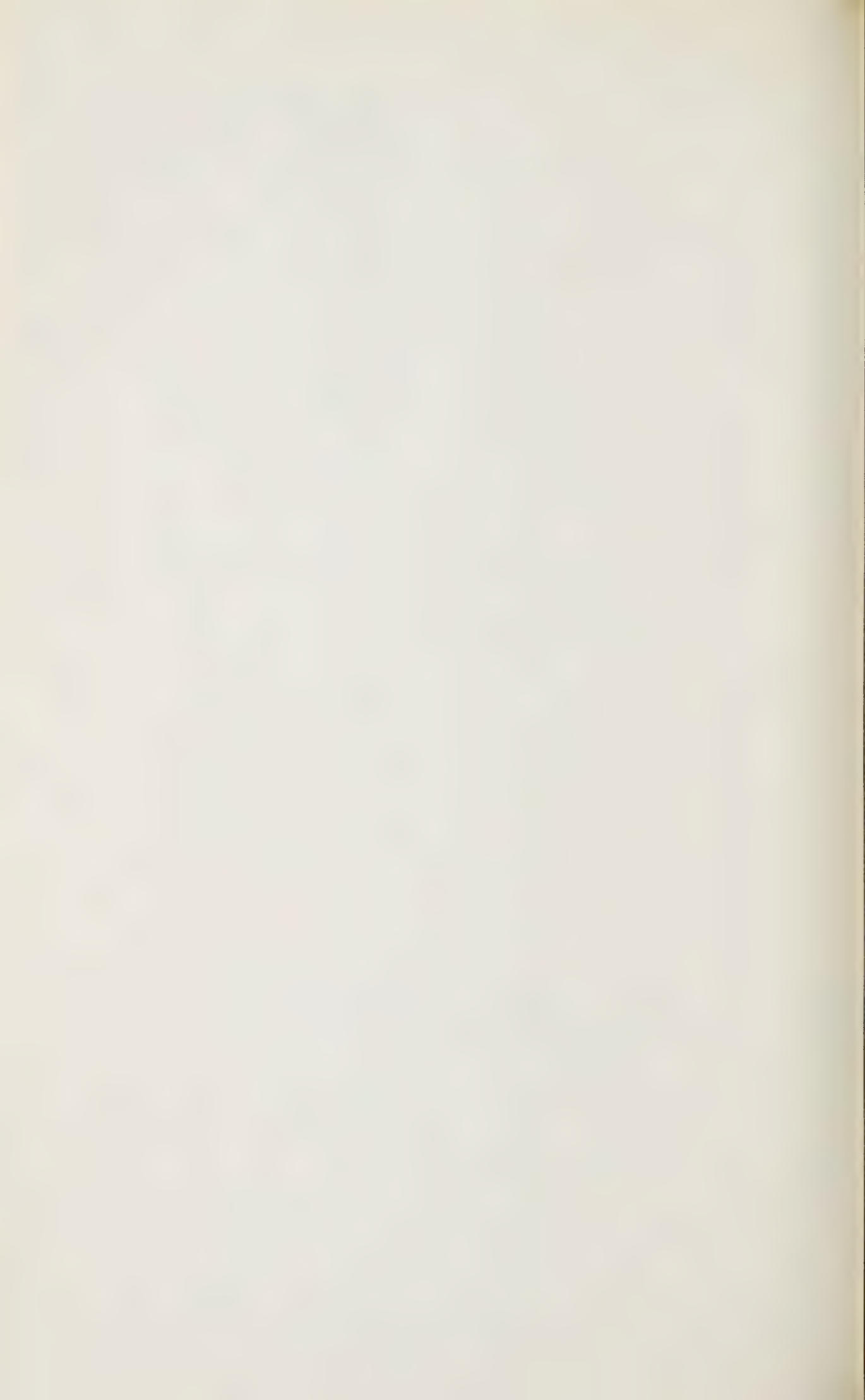
Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams
Cross-Exam by Hollingworth

1
2 WITNESS DABBS: At this time,
3 of course, I can speak only to the biological feasibility
4 of it, and the desirability of using the technique.
5 I believe the trials we've had to date have demonstrated
6 to us that there are benefits to using the technique.
7 The technique we have used in experimental plots has
8 been one of simply using a D-7 cat, which is not a
9 large cat, the blades are at an angle and before frost
10 penetrates the permafrost table, a cat of that size
11 can quite easily walk along and peel this material
12 back. In actual fact of construction, I don't believe
13 we have established the technique to be used on a
14 full construction basis. There are a number of options,
15 however, which are open. One would be the use of a
16 backhoe that would peel the material from the ditch
17 line, which of course will be actively surveyed at the
18 time; or if this cannot be used for one reason or
19 another, certainly a pilot ditch can be run with a
20 wheel-ditching machine.

21 Q When you speak of
22 peeling it off with a backhoe, that sort of is like
23 the sod from my front lawn, it seems to me, that sort
24 of technique; are you actually peeling it off in a
layer like that, or does it come off in lumps the way
you showed it in your slides?

A It comes off in lumps from
that size to perhaps two feet in diameter, or the size
of the bucket, if you are using a backhoe.

Q I see, and how would you
put it back on after you've finished your pipeline



Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams
Cross-Exam by Hollingworth

construction?

A The technique has certainly not been established, as that's a construction question I can speak only to the options that I think are open at the moment. The material would be set far enough aside, if it's not covered with the spoil it could be picked up with a backhoe, a small dragline as they use in backfilling pipelines in the south, or with a Mormon board, and simply pull it over and drop it on top.

Q Sorry, what did you say, a Mormon board?

A Yes, that's a pipeline phrase I just picked up.

Q Can you explain it to me, please?

A It's simply a wide shallow bucket on a dragline that's specifically designed for picking up the spoil and returning it, and dropping it into the ditch.

Q So you wouldn't use hand to do this?

A No, that wouldn't be the intent, not for the most of it. I would foresee the possible need of some hand treatment of turning larger pieces, ^{upright} but again you would never attempt to get all the pieces nicely placed upright.

Q Now, would you agree that a correct definition of "agitated propagation" is a method of propagating, using parts of plants other than

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams
Cross-Exam by Hollingworth

1 seeds.

2 A That's accurate enough,
3 yes.

4 Q And are you going to use
5 any other vegetation measures besides the sod replacement
6 and the seed mats and the low tundra in the low Arctic
7 tundra region?

8 A On very rare occasion,
9 on streams where material is available we possibly
10 would go to the use of willow cuttings as shown in the
11 last slide. Those are very limited, of course. The
12 number of streams that have a willow growth on the
13 side slopes, so the two techniques you mentioned would
14 be the principal propagation ditching.

15 Q Now are you using willow
16 stem cuttings when you speak of willow cuttings?

17 A Yes, either hard or
18 soft stem cuttings work perfectly well with willows.

19 Q Well, I assume that the
20 purpose of this technique is to obtain deeper root
21 penetration and inhibit erosion as much as possible
22 on stream bank crossings. Would that be right, on
23 stream banks?

24 A That is the major reason,
25 of course, is the deeper root and of course the woody
26 nature of the plant cover as opposed to the soft body
27 of grasses which --

28 Q If that's your purpose,
29 wouldn't it be better to use a root cutting rather than
30 a stem cutting?

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams
Cross-Exam by Hollingworth

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30

A Root cutting requires that you have a nursery to establish these in, to have them rooted, as you say, and the technique is possible but very time-consuming and unnecessarily expensive in the light of our results, where the materials are available on-site, simply takes some in, and knives and machettes, and you can prepare all the material you need and obtain 90 to 100% rooting sets with the willows, so it's shown to be unnecessary to go to a root cutting.

Q You wouldn't think that a rooted cutting would be more effective?

A It's difficult to be more effective than 100% success.

Q Wouldn't a rooted cutting obtain a deeper root penetration in the first year than a stem cutting?

A The material that we planted and dug up provided root penetration for most of the active layer and again I'm not arguing in opposition to a root cutting, but what I'm saying is we can obtain the same results from a stem cutting.

Q Well, are these results of yours contained in one of your reports that you've mentioned?

A The first results are in the Biological Reports, Volume II, first photographs. I believe in the report, progress report re vegetation by Younkin & Friesen, and certainly the result -- I know the results of subsequent measurements are being

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams

Cross-Exam by Hollingworth

1 incorporated into another progress report on San Sault
2 re-vegetation which is in preparation.

3 Q When do you expect that
4 report to be out?

5 A I would expect before
6 Christmas.

7 Q Would your counsel
8 undertake to provide me with a copy?

9 MR. MARSHALL: Yes.

10 MR. HOLLINGWORTH: Q Now as
11 I understand Arctic Gas' program is going to use
12 basically agrinomics, varieties or species of plants
13 rather than native species, is that correct?

14 A That's basically correct.
15 Yes.

16 Q What's not correct about
17 it then? Your qualifying your answer.

18 A The native species have
19 been part of our experimental work for the past three
20 years. ^(W) We've had a major program for experimental
21 studies in multiplication of several of the native
22 species, so it is our intention to include them when
23 it's proven feasible to do so, and at this stage do
24 you recall the specifications in the application we
25 did name the fact that there would be native species
26 in the appendix to my testimony here. There is a short
27 discussion indicating that they have been removed
28 temporarily until proven that they can be produced in
29 quantities where suitable for pipeline re-vegetation.

30 Q Would you prefer native

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams
Cross-Exam by Hollingworth.

species if you had your --

A We would prefer to include them, yes.

Q Include them in what proportions, though?

A Of course that subject for experimentation to determine precisely how and when to use them in association with the faster growing commercial varieties, if you wish, or economics, and at this point in time those data are really not available.

Q Do I understand you then to say that your program would include agronomic varieties in any event, no matter how successful you were in growing native species? Or varieties?

A Yes, the work that was done by Dr. Younkin while with the University of Alberta under the direction of Dr. Bliss in the reports to allure have proven quite conclusively the need for agronomic varieties to provide for quick initial erosion control. The native species, the pioneer species simply do not establish rapidly enough to provide erosion control in short-term.

Q But the agronomic species do?

A They've been shown to do that, yes

Q I think in your deficiency letter No. 7 to the National Energy Board in fact you've

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams
Cross-Exam by Hollingworth

made that case, have you not?

A Yes.

Q Well, can I refer you to
the Mitchell & Kendrick Report of February 10, 1975?

A I don't have it before
me.

Q Do you not have it with
you?

A Not with me, no.

Q Are you familiar with it?
I only have the one copy of the chart with me.

A I'm familiar with the
report. I certainly couldn't recall details.

Q All right, well I'm
referring to Table 7 of that. That's on page 24 of
the Mitchell & Kendrick Report of February 10, 1975,
and I'll have a copy of this produced and as I under-
stand it, this chart gives the percentage ground
cover provided by six species planted in large blocks.
Is that correct?

MR. MARSHALL: Well, he hasn't
got the document.

MR. HOLLINGWORTH: Well, perhaps
then, Mr. Commissioner, to pursue this line of question-
ing I should have a copy of this made, if we could take
a short break at this point and I'll just go and have
it done by the office here.

THE COMMISSIONER: All right.

MR. HOLLINGWORTH: Thanks.

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams
Cross-Exam by Hollingworth

THE COMMISSIONER: While you're doing that, Miss Minning, maybe I've forgotten earlier, you said that if you built this pipeline along the coastal route, the prime route, you would require 23 million cubic yards of borrow material, that would be quarried or mined from 98 sites. Then you said you'd need another 7 million cubic yards of borrow material for the actual trenching and backfill and so on. Would you need additional sites? I don't know whether --

11757
Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki. McCart, Minning
Williams.
Cross - Exam. by Hollingworth.

6

WITNESS MINNING: No, those ^{are} are shown, or included in slides that are on the strip maps already. Most of the compressor sites will have a borrow site for that compressor site, but there are also borrow sites between compressor sites in the areas where these measures will be most often needed.

THE COMMISSIONER: Miss Minning, sorry, while we are looking for these documents. The 98 sites, the most important category is obviously glacial fluvial, then alluvial flood plains, fans and terraces are important as well, along with bedrock, morainal much less important and glacial lacustrine, though it is a category it doesn't have any... A. It probably shouldn't have been included on the chart.

Q. Just to make sure I understood those slides you showed us. Would the Eskers be glacial fluvial? A. Yes, they are.

Q. And the alluvial flood plains, fans and terraces speak for themselves then. Those three categories on the left hand side of the chart, bedrock presents the least problems I take it of those three categories to the environmental impact. The bedrock quarries, or sources of borrow, whatever you would call them, would be less likely to be associated today with the movement of water. or am I wrong about that? A. That is correct, but there are environmental concerns with the bedrock sites, particularly the raptors. Alyeska has found problems with bedrock sites too and its access roads are longer.

11750
Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams.
Cross - Exam by Hollingworth.

Q. Oh yes, but we were concentrat-
ing on - - at least the slides seemed to emphasize the
problem of removing borrow from streams and rivers.

Are you ready to...?

MR. MARSHALL: Sir, on that point,
since you have raised it. I guess I have not made it
clear in going through the questions with the panel. I
think Mr. Hemstock or Dr. McCart might wish to comment
on this, but I think the feeling of the panel is that
by and large the sites in the active channels of rivers
may be in many cases preferable from an environmental
point of view over, say, those that would be in bedrock
because, as Dr. McCart has indicated after a couple of
years you can't even tell that there has been a borrow
operation there.

THE COMMISSIONER: You said active
channels of rivers. I thought you weren't taking any
borrow from the active channels of rivers?

MR. MARSHALL: I am sorry, active
flood plains,

THE COMMISSIONER: Well, yes, I
understand that and I understand that the problem of
access to bedrock sites and disturbance of birds, or some
other form of life might well be important. I was just
trying to grasp the significance of what we have seen
with the slides. At any rate, no doubt they will come
to that in due course and if they don't we'll raise it
with them. Mr. Scott, you might cover that. Make sure
it is not overlooked. Well, back to you then I think,
Mr. Hollingworth.

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams.
Cross - Exam. by Hollingworth.

MR. HOLLINGWORTH: Q. Mr. Dabbs,
you have the table in front of you now and it shows, as
I understand it six species the Puccinellia, Deschampsia,
Arctagrostis, Poa Glaucantha, Nugget bluegrass and
Deschampsia, is that correct? A. It does.

Q. And of those puccinellia,
deschampsia, poa glauca, and deschampsia are the two
different varieties there, are native varieties. Is
that correct?

A And so is Arctic red
fescue.

Q Well, there's a certain
amount of debate on that, isn't there? Some consider
it native species and others do not. Is that correct?

A Arctic red was selected
from the native stem stock from the State of Alaska,
which are native.

THE COMMISSIONER: Can I have
a copy of this piece of paper?

MR. HOLLINGWORTH:

I'm sorry, Mr.

A :
Commissioner. I don't believe there are English
names for most of these.

MR. HOLLINGWORTH: Q Well,
in any event, Mr. Dabbs, nugget bluegrass definitely is
not a native species, isn't that correct? It's
agronomic.

A Well, of course I'm trying
to incorporate here -- you're confusing species with
varieties.

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams
Cross-Exam by Hollingworth

1
2 Q I'm sorry, I'm obviously
3 not a biologist. I will say "variety" from now on, and
4 thank you for the admonition.

5 A Your questioning here
6 nugget blue is not native to Prudhoe Bay where this
7 work was done.

8 Q Well, don't these native
9 varieties show substantial ground cover which in the
10 first year, that is to say 1973 and still in some
11 cases still more substantial coverage in 1974 with the
12 great exception of nugget bluegrass, which has declined
13 substantially in '74?

14 A Yes, the data show that.
15 I have also visited all of these spots personally and
16 I would like to just point out the difference between
17 the research conditions that we're discussing here,
18 where it points out in the heading, on a scraped
19 site. That site was prepared as a garden site with
20 scraping and rototilling of the upper organic material
21 into the substrate just for clarification of
22 the line of questioning.

23 Q Well, excuse me, but
24 wouldn't the pipeline mound be essentially a scraped
25 site?

26 A Scraped in this sense
27 means that we scraped the living material off, leaving
28 about a foot of organic material and then rototilling
29 that in, which is -- and that's a level or slightly
30 depressional area as opposed to the raised mound

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams
Cross-Exam by Hollingworth

situation of a backfill.

Q Well, are you saying then that these test results are only significant in relation to a scraped site and would not be in general terms?

A No sir, I interjected this only for the purpose of clarifying this situation, as we accept these data, as you referred to page 7 of Appendix "C", I point out the exact same -- or Dr. Younkin pointed out the exact same findings in these same species as named, some of the hardiest and best covered producers.

Q Well, why is it so essential to have agronomic varieties to establish good coverage, if you've got this sort of cover as indicated on this table, after such a short period of time with native species?

A Well, that worked very well there. I'd like also to point out the research findings from Inuvik, gained by Dr. Younkin which is reported -- and we're talking the same topic here -- in Progress Report on CAGSL re-vegetation studies north of 60, September 1974.

MR. MARSHALL:

Sir, I believe this report is included in the list of reports that Mr. Dabbs is relying upon. It had not got into a supplemental list of reports and studies yet, so perhaps it would be appropriate to have it entered as an exhibit, as the witness is referring to it, and if Mr. Hollingworth requires a copy we can have one.

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock.
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams
Cross-Exam by Hollingworth

MR. HOLLINGWORTH: I would like
a copy, Mr. Marshall. Where did you say this was
listed, just to clarify it for me?

A List of publications I
used in preparation of my testimony. It should be
there.

Q Would that be in the
literature cited at the end of Appendix "C", or would
it be in your list of documents?

A List of documents.

Q After your qualifications.

A For the purpose of the
record I could simply read the pertinent paragraph,
I think that would be helpful in this case. Page 37,
Section 5, of the Progress Report entitled:

"Native Species, Success in Field Trials at
Inuvik and Tuktoyaktuk, N.W.T."

MR. MARSHALL: Just before you read that
in, the reference would be found at page 16, I believe
that would be to Appendix "C" where this report is
listed.

A. Yes.

MR. MARSHALL: To make the
record clear, sir, the reference to the report that
Mr. Dabbs wishes to quote from is found at page 16
of Dr. Younkin's report, which was Appendix "C" to the
testimony of the panel. Now the paragraph at the
bottom of the page reads,

"At the end of the first summer all species
referring to the species listed above, which were

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams

Cross-Exam by Hollingworth

1 fairway crested wheatgrass, nugget Kentucky bluegrass,
2 Artared creeping red fescue, Kall orchardgrass,
3 frontier Reed canarygrass, Engmo timothy, and the two
4 native grasses, the common name, tall Arctic grass
5 or specific name, *Arctagrostis latifolia* and bluejoint,
6 which is known as *calamagrostis canadensis*." I'm sorry,
7 I'll start the paragraph again.
8

9 "At the end of the first summer all species
10 were clipped and weighed except for the two
11 native grasses, which were considered too
12 small. By the end of the second summer, 1972,
13 the native grasses had become better established
14 along with Artared creeping red fescue and nugget
15 Kentucky bluegrass were considered the most
16 successful species."

17 That was reported in Hernandez in his report of 1973,
18 and his root work had been established by Younkin while
19 a graduate student under Dr. Bliss at the University
20 of Alberta.

21 When inspected again in 1973
22 the same four species were the most successful, the
23 remainder having died or slowly showing only marginal
24 survival. After a relatively slow start, the two
25 native grasses appeared to be quite successful and it
26 was decided to clip sections of the four main species
27 to determine their net annual above-ground production.
28
29
30

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Hemstock
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams -
Cross - Exam. by Hollingworth.

Now, in the like of this and work reported by Mitchell & McKendrick also paid for by Artic Gas, having visited both these sites myself and YOUNKIN having visited both sites, we conclude that the most appropriate approach at this time, until there is further evidence to prove otherwise is to attempt to gain the best of both worlds, that is to use the more rapidly establishing agronomic varieties, if you wish to use the phrase, and the native species, which are pioneer species which normally invade seismic disturbances, natural disturbances in the area, which will thus place the right-of-way into an early successional state and result in a stable plant cover.

MR. MARSHALL: I will have Mr. Dabbs make a photocopy of the passage that he was quoting from, sir, and provide it to the court reporters.

MR. HOLLINGWORTH: Q Well, turning back to Table 7 then, Mr. Dabbs, doesn't this show that native varieties grow just as quickly as agronomic ones? A. In this particular test, yes.

Q. Are you saying that there is something unique about this test that should be ignored? A. No. I am suggesting that there is other evidence that suggests the need for a slightly different approach that's all.

Q. All right. thank you. A. I have complete confidence in Dr. Mitchell's data.

Q. Now, on page 7 of Appendix C, if you wouldn't mind turning to that. A Yes, I have it.

Q. The statement made in Paragraph 4, point 1, point 2, that with the native grasses you are having problems with the dormancy and flowering mechanisms, is that correct? That is about three-quarters of the way down the paragraph. This is before you can develop commercial quantities of the seed. A. Yes, I have that.

Q. That is with particular reference to two native species, varieties *Arctagrostis latifolia* and *Calamagrostis canadensis*, is that correct?

Clark, Dabbs, Farlan, Hemstock.
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams.
Cross - Exam. by Hollingworth.

1
2 A. That's right.

3 Q. What exactly are these problems
4 that you are having? Could you be more specific? A.
5 Certainly. The program which Artic Gas has sponsored and
6 it is now a second sponsorship here. the Northern Affairs
7 Department, is one that we started with a collection of
8 seed, the ^{eco-type} types of those two species from Fort
9 Simpson through to Tuktoyaktuk, all of these of course
10 being kept separate because of the genetic variability
11 within the eco-types. The program for multiplication
12 has been one where we find it economically attractive to
13 attempt in northern Alberta, where it can be done under
14 somewhat normal agricultural production conditions, and
15 in this case we are bringing seed of eco-types adapted
16 to very long or continuous daylength into an area of less
17 than twenty-four hour daylength. Fort Vermilion I believe
18 is rated at about nineteen and a half hours of twilight
19 by the Environment of Canada, Met Branch, so we are deal-
20 ing with something in a shorter day length. If these
21 are to be produced in any large quantities on an agric-
22 ultural basis, they have to be able to grow within an area
23 that, or we believe they have to be grown within an area
24 such as the Fort Vermilion - Le Grate area, which is
25 about as far north as feasible agricultural production
26 takes place, and the statement relates to that, the problem
27 of dormancy in flower mechanism. Flower mechanism being
28 that plants from a twenty-four hour daylight regime may
29 not flower and may not set seed under an eighteen hour
30 daylight.

1 However, to cover that we have established plots within
2 the Mackenzie Delta proper, near Taglu, which obviously
3 compensates for that problem.

4 Q. When you say they might not
5 flower and they might not seed are you sure of that, or
6 is this just a suspicion that you have, or have results
7 over many years shown that they are not doing it?

8 A.
9 The results of the Ph. D. research and thesis written
10 by Younkin at the University of Alberta was specifically
11 on the ~~one~~ecology of these two species. He has worked on
12 these species for a large number of years and this is
13 his report. Now, I am familiar with his findings and it
14 is Dr. Younkin's findings that, for instance that *Arctagro-*
15 *stis* from Tuk probably requires twenty-four hours daylength
16 to flower and set seed, consequently, selections
17 taken from that area would have to be grown within the,
18 probably the Mackenzie Delta, whereas selections of
19 *Calamagrostis* from the Fort Simpson area and Norman Wells
20 area flower perfectly well under the shorter daylight.

21 Q. Now, also on that page 7 you
22 make reference to about five native varieties. That is
23 on page 7 of Appendix C. A. Yes.

24 Q. All right. Have you produced
25 seed at all in, or in commercial quantity from any of
26 those varieties? A. Of the two names varieties?

27 Q. No, of the five that are
28 mentioned on page 7. We are speaking of *Puccinellia*,
29 *Arctagrostis latifolia*, *Calamagrostis canadensis*, *Deschampsia*
30 *and Poa Glaucantha.* A. Those five that are listed
there are from the works of Dr Mitchell, who is a very

Clark, Dabbs, Harlan, Forster
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning
Williams.
Cross - Exam. by Hollingworth.

1 as a consultant for Artic Gas and he has produced some
2 though I am not certain all of those are possible yet
3 on a commercial basis, but he has acreage of several
4 those under production in the Palmer - Alaska area right
5 now, but of those other three, other than Arctagrostis and
6 Calamagrostis, no, we are not dealing with those, as Mr.
7 Mitchell is working with them.

8 Q. Do you have any seed of the
9 Arctagrostis latifolia and Calamagrostis canadensis varieties
10 at the moment? A. I would like to produce -- We
11 have not yet produced any. The field plots were only
12 established in mid-summer, 1974. The seed we have in
13 hand has been collected from native stands.

14 Q. Well, on page 52 of the -- maybe
15 it is the same document you are referring to "Progress
16 Report on CAGSL Re-vegetation Studies North of 60"
17 Younkin and Friesen, dated September '74. A. Yes.

18 Q. You have that page reference
19 in front of you? A. Yes.

20 Q. You speak there of having approximately 236 pounds of
21 Arctagrostis and 28 pounds of
22 Calamagrostis, or enough to plant 75 acres of Arctagrostis
23 and 9 acres of Calamagrostis. Am I reading that correctly?
24 A. Yes, you have read it correctly. I am just reading it.

25 THE COMMISSIONER: What I want to
26 know is why isn't Mr. Gibbs here to ask these questions
27 about crops?

28 MR. HOLLINGWORTH: He is bringing
29 in his own, sir.

RECEIVED
NOV 11 1975

Clark Dabbs Harlan, Herstock,
Koskimaki, McCart, Minning,
Williams.

(Cross - Exam, 11/11/75)

MR. MARSHALL: He specializes in

Ray, sir.

THE COMMISSIONER: Well, I think
maybe we might adjourn for the day. We are cheating
ourselves of forty-five minutes. but maybe we can make
it up tomorrow or later in the week and we will all be
a little fresher tomorrow.

MR. HOLLINGWORTH: Mr. Dabbs can
think about that one overnight.

MR. MARSHALL: I'm sure he'll think
of little else.

(PROCEEDINGS ADJOURNED TO NOVEMBER 4, 1975)

347
M835
Vol. 79

Mackenzie Valley pipeline inquiry:
Vol. 79 3 November 1975

347
M835
Vol. 79

3 1761 1146723 0

